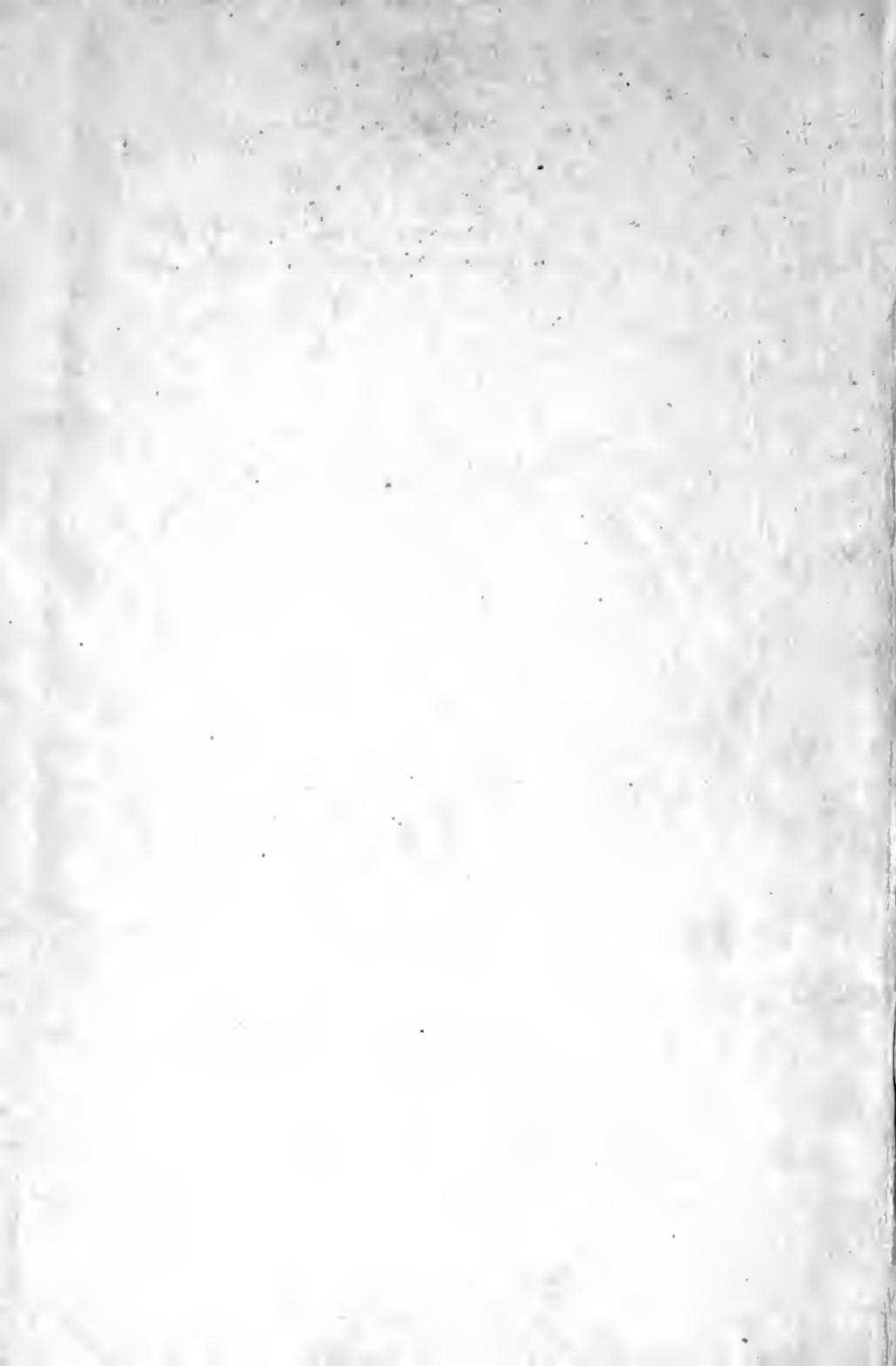


3 1761 04751573 9





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation





ELEMENTARY

L A T I N G R A M M A R .

BY

ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D.,

TRIN. COLL., DUBLIN;

ONE OF THE CLASSICAL MASTERS IN THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.



114070
0 0 1 1

LONDON:

T. NELSON AND SONS, PATERNOSTER ROW;
EDINBURGH; AND NEW YORK.

MDCCLXV.

NELSON'S CLASSICAL SERIES.

FIRST LATIN READER. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. Fourth Edition. 216 pages 12mo. Price 2s.

SECOND LATIN READER. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. 384 pages. Price 3s. 6d.

GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. 12mo. 268 pages. Price 2s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. 12mo. 170 pages. Price 1s. 3d.

FIRST GREEK READER. By ARCHIBALD H. BRYCE, LL.D. Third Edition. 222 pages. Price 2s. 6d.

HORACE. Edited by Dr. FREUND, author of "Latin Lexicon," &c., and JOHN CARMICHAEL, M.A., one of the Classical Masters of the High School, Edinburgh. With Life of Horace, Notes, Vocabulary of Proper Names, and Chronological Table. 12mo, cloth. Price 3s. 6d.

VIRGILII MARONIS CARMINA. Edited by Dr. FREUND. With Life, Notes, and Vocabulary of Proper Names. 12mo, cloth. Price 3s. 6d.

T. NELSON AND SONS, LONDON, EDINBURGH, AND NEW YORK.

Preface.

THIS Work is an abridgment of the Larger Latin Grammar forming part of the same Series. It is designed for the use of beginners, and of those who intend to prosecute classical studies only to a limited extent. It therefore contains merely the amount and kind of information considered necessary for the age and requirements of such students. Some matter, however, has been inserted—usually in smaller type—which may be omitted in the earlier stages of instruction, and which will with more profit be presented to the pupil when he is farther advanced.

The Syntax has been less abridged than the other portions of the work, because the natural connection of its several parts rendered curtailment more difficult; and because it is right that all students, whatever their ultimate object may be, should have a systematic view of the principles which regulate the construction of Latin sentences, and of the peculiar idioms of the language.

In compliance with the wish of many teachers in Scotland, the author has appended to Part II. Ruddiman's Rules of

Syntax; which, though not free from serious defects, have the great merit of brevity, and of being easily committed to memory.

To illustrate satisfactorily the many changes which appear in the declension of Nouns, an unusually large number of Paradigms has been given; and throughout the entire book the greatest care has been taken, by simplicity of statement and clearness of arrangement, assisted by the resources of typography, to present the facts and principles of Latin Grammar to the young in a manner at once interesting and impressive.

Contents.

PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

| Chapter | Page |
|--|------|
| I. LETTERS AND SYLLABLES, | 9 |
| Sect. I. The Letters, | 9 |
| II. Syllables—Quantity | 11 |
| II. CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS, | 11 |
| III. INFLEXION: GENDER—NUMBER—CASE, | 12 |
| IV. SUBSTANTIVES, | 14 |
| Sect. I. General Remarks, | 14 |
| II. First Declension, | 16 |
| III. Second Declension, | 17 |
| IV. Third Declension, | 20 |
| V. Fourth Declension, | 31 |
| VI. Fifth Declension, | 32 |
| V. ADJECTIVES, | 34 |
| Sect. I. Inflexion of Adjectives, | 34 |
| II. Comparison of Adjectives, | 42 |
| VI. THE NUMERALS, | 46 |
| VII. PRONOUNS, | 50 |
| Sect. I. Personal Pronouns, | 50 |
| II. Reflexive Pronouns, | 51 |
| III. Possessive Pronouns, | 51 |
| IV. Demonstrative Pronouns, | 52 |
| V. The Relative Pronoun, | 54 |
| VI. The Interrogative Pronouns, | 55 |
| VII. The Indefinite Pronouns, | 55 |

| Chapter | Page |
|--|------|
| VIII. THE VERB, | 56 |
| Sect. I. Introductory, | 56 |
| II. First Conjugation, | 60 |
| III. Second Conjugation, | 64 |
| IV. Third Conjugation— <i>Lego</i> and <i>Capio</i> , | 68 |
| V. Fourth Conjugation, | 76 |
| VI. The Four Conjugations at one view, | 80 |
| IX. DEPONENT VERBS, | 84 |
| Sect. I. First Conjugation, | 84 |
| II. Second Conjugation, | 84 |
| III. Third Conjugation, | 86 |
| IV. Fourth Conjugation, | 86 |
| X. IRREGULAR VERBS, | 88 |
| Sect. I. The Verb <i>Sum</i> , | 88 |
| II. The Verb <i>Possum</i> , | 90 |
| III. The Verb <i>Prosum</i> , | 92 |
| IV. The Verb <i>Eo</i> , | 94 |
| V. The Verb <i>Fero</i> , | 96 |
| VI. The Verb <i>Volo</i> , | 100 |
| VII. The Verb <i>Nolo</i> , | 100 |
| VIII. The Verb <i>Malo</i> , | 102 |
| IX. The Verb <i>Fio</i> , | 104 |
| X. The Verb <i>Edo</i> , | 106 |
| XI. Defective Verbs, | 108 |
| XII. Impersonal Verbs, | 110 |
| XI. ADVERBS, | 112 |
| XII. PREPOSITIONS, | 114 |
| XIII. CONJUNCTIONS, | 115 |
| XIV. INTERJECTIONS, | 115 |

PART II.—SYNTAX.

| | |
|---|-----|
| I. SENTENCES, | 116 |
| II. AGREEMENT OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE, | 118 |
| III. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE, | 120 |
| IV. APPPOSITION, | 121 |
| V. THE NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE CASES, | 122 |
| VI. THE ACCUSATIVE, | 122 |
| VII. THE DATIVE, | 124 |

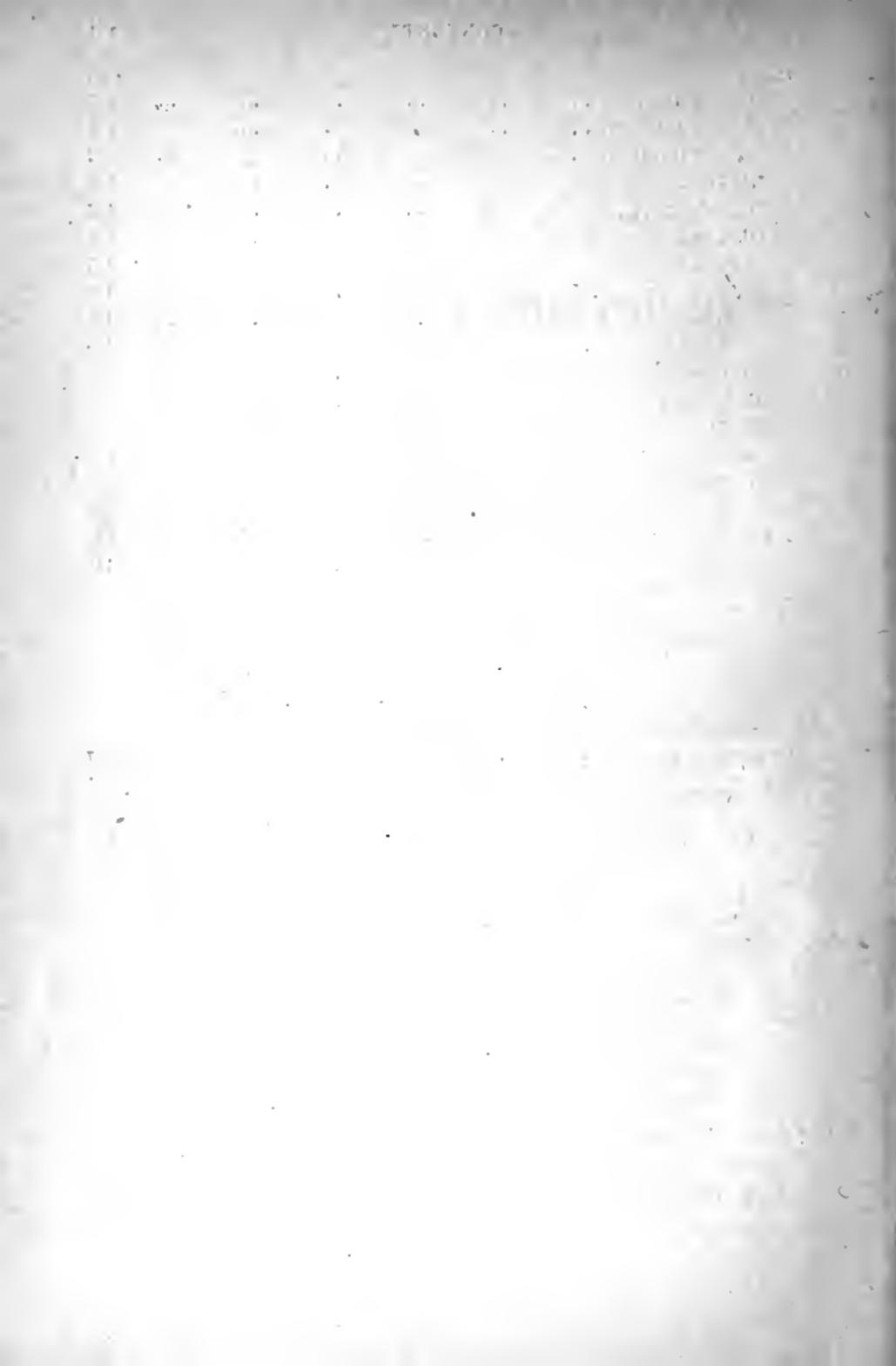
CONTENTS.

vii

| Chapter | Page |
|---|------|
| VIII. THE GENITIVE, ... | 127 |
| IX. THE ABLATIVE, ... | 129 |
| X. THE INFINITIVE, ... | 132 |
| XI. THE SUPINES, ... | 133 |
| XII. PARTICIPLES, ... | 133 |
| XIII. THE GERUND, ... | 134 |
| XIV. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, ... | 135 |
| XV. COMPOUND SENTENCES—PRINCIPAL CLAUSES, ... | 136 |
| XVI. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES, ... | 137 |
| XVII. FINAL CLAUSES, ... | 138 |
| XVIII. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES, ... | 139 |
| XIX. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES, ... | 140 |
| XX. TEMPORAL CLAUSES, ... | 140 |
| XXI. CAUSAL CLAUSES, ... | 141 |
| XXII. RELATIVE CLAUSES, ... | 141 |
| XXIII. INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES, ... | 143 |
| XXIV. SEQUENCE OF TENSES, ... | 143 |
| XXV. RUDDIMAN'S RULES, ... | 146 |

APPENDIX.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| GENDER OF NOUNS, ... | 157 |
| IRREGULAR VERBS, ... | 161 |
| GREEK NOUNS, ... | 169 |
| THE CALENDAR, ... | 170 |
| ROMAN MONEY AND MEASURES, ... | 172 |
| ROMAN NAMES, ... | 174 |
| ABBREVIATIONS, ... | 175 |



ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART I. ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.—LETTERS AND SYLLABLES.

SECTION I.—THE LETTERS.

1. LETTERS are signs for sounds.
2. The Latin letters are the same as the English, except that *W* is wanting. Thus:—

Capitals:—A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M,
N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

Small:—a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q,
r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

Obs. 1.—The Romans had originally only one form, *i*, for the vowel *i* and the consonant *j*; and one form, *v*, for the vowel *u* and the consonant *r*.

Obs. 2.—*H* is not properly a letter, but only a breathing. Thus the twenty-five letters of the Alphabet may be reduced to twenty-two.

3. The letters are divided into two classes—*Vowels* and *Consonants*.

4. The Vowels (*Vocales*, i.e., “sound-producing”) are six,—*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*.

5 The Consonants (*Con-sonantes*), which cannot be sounded without the help of a vowel, are either,—

- (1.) Semi-vowels*—*l, m, n, r*, and the sibilant *s*; or,
- (2.) Mutes—*p, b, f, v; c, k, qu, g, h, (j); t, d*.

6. The Mutes admit of a double classification :—(1.) According to the organ by which they are pronounced, viz., Labials, or lip-letters; Palatals, or throat-letters; Lingual Dentals, those uttered by applying the tongue to the teeth. And (2.) According to the degree of breathing employed in their utterance, viz., light or sharp, intermediate, and rough or flat. Thus :—

| LABIALS. | PALATALS. | LINGUAL DENTALS. |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>p</i> | <i>c, k, or qu</i> | <i>t</i> |
| <i>b</i> | <i>g, (j)</i> | <i>d</i> |
| <i>f, v, (ph)</i> | <i>h, (ch)</i> | <i>(th)</i> |
| | | light or sharp. |
| | | intermediate. |
| | | rough or flat. |

7. *x* and *z* are double consonants, being equal,—

- (1.) *x* to *cs*, or *gs*, and sometimes to *hs* or *qus*.
- (2.) *z* to *sd* or *ds*.

8. The Alphabet, then, may be arranged as follows :—

| | | | |
|--|---------------------------------|---|---|
| (1.) Six Vowels, | <i>a, e, i, o, u, y</i> . | | |
| (2.) Nineteen Consonants, divided into | { | Five Semi-vowels,..... <i>l, m, n, r, s</i> . | |
| | | { | Four Labials,..... <i>p, b, f, v</i> . |
| | | | Six Palatals,..... <i>c, k, qu; g, h, (j)</i> . |
| | | { | Two Lingual Dentals,..... <i>t, d</i> . |
| | | | Two Double Consonants,..... <i>x, z</i> . |

9. The word *Diphthong* means “double sound.” A diphthong is composed of two vowels combined together in pronunciation. Those of most common occurrence are *ae, oe* (both sounded *ē*), and *au*; as, *coenae, audio. ei, eu, oi, and ui* are rare.

Obs.—When two vowels meet in a word, but are not to be taken as a diphthong, a mark of diaeresis (·) is placed over the second: as, *poëta*, pronounced *po-ē-ta*.

* A vowel sound has two characteristics:—First, *it comes freely* in pronunciation; and, secondly, when it is once formed, *it can be prolonged*. The semi-vowels possess this second property, and hence their name of *half-vowels*. The semi-vowels *l, m, n, r*, are also called liquids.

SECTION II.—SYLLABLES—QUANTITY.

1. A Syllable is one distinct articulate sound.
2. A syllable may consist of one letter, if that letter be a vowel ; or of two or more letters sounded at a breath. Every syllable must contain one vowel sound ; as, *i*, “go ;” *et*, “and ;” *te*, “thee ;” *poenae*, “of punishment ;” *urbs*, “a city.”
3. The quantity of a syllable is the time taken up in pronouncing it. Hence, as regards quantity, there are two kinds of syllables—*short* and *long*. A syllable which is sometimes pronounced short, and sometimes long, is called *variable*.
4. When we wish to indicate that a syllable is short, we mark it with a curve, thus—*sĕdĕo* ; that it is long, with a horizontal stroke, thus—*sēdēs* ; that it is variable, with both, thus—*tĕnĕbrae* (*i.e.*, either *tĕnĕbrae* or *tēnĕbrae*).
5. A short syllable is said to have one “time” (*mōra*), and a long syllable two “times.” Hence a long syllable is equal to two short ones ; hence, too, all diphthongs, being composed of two vowel sounds, are long.
6. The quantity of a syllable generally depends on the vowel of that syllable. A vowel may be long either (1) *by nature*—*i.e.*, when it has absorbed, or is *supposed* to have absorbed, another vowel or a consonant, as in diphthongs and contracted syllables ; or (2) when it stands before two consonants or a double consonant—as, *mĕllis*. In the latter case it is said to be long *by position*.

CHAPTER II.—CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

1. THE words which form the Latin language may be grouped in eight classes, commonly called the Eight Parts of Speech.

2. Four of these suffer changes, or *inflexion*, on the final syllables, and hence are called Declinable. The other four remain unchanged.

| DECLINABLE. | | INDECLINABLE. |
|---------------------|--|---------------|
| Substantive (Noun). | | Adverb. |
| Adjective (Noun). | | Preposition. |
| Pronoun. | | Interjection. |
| Verb. | | Conjunction. |

Obs.—The inflexion of substantives, adjectives, and pronouns is called Declension (*declinatio*) ; that of verbs, Conjugation (*conjugatio*).

3. (I.) A Substantive (Noun) is a word which is used as the name of anything that we speak about: as, *sērvūs*, slave; *ēquūs*, horse; *dōmūs*, house; *jūstītiā*, justice; *bēllum*, war.

4. (II.) An Adjective (Noun) is a word which is used with a substantive, to indicate some quality or attribute, or to announce some fact: as, *bōnūs pūēr*, a good boy; *trēs ēquī*, three horses.

5. (III.) A Pronoun is a word which is used to supply the place of a substantive, or to point to some substantive going before or following: as, *ēgo*, I; *tū*, thou; *quī*, who; *ille*, that person.

6. (IV.) A Verb is that part of speech which is used to make an assertion about something: as, *māgister laudāt pūērū*, the master praises the boy.

7. (V.) An Adverb is a word which is used with verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, to modify their meaning in regard to time, place, manner, &c.: as, *tūm praeērat exercitū*, he at that time commanded the army; *acrīter pugnant*, they fight keenly.

8. (VI.) A Preposition is a word which is placed before substantives, to show in what relation a thing, an action, or an attribute stands to some other thing: as, *fiscos cum pēcūniā*, bags with money; *vēnit in urbem*, he came into the city.

9. (VII.) A Conjunction* is a word which serves to connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences to one another—each to one of its own kind: as, *pāter et māter*, the father and mother; *dū et acrīter*, long and keenly; *proxīmus aetāte, et ejusdem civitātis*, most nearly coeval, and a fellow-citizen; *lēgo et disco*, I read and learn; *lēgo ut discam*, I read that I may learn.

10. (VIII.) An Interjection is a word which is used to express some emotion of the mind: as, *heu*, alas! *euge*, bravo! *heus*, holla!

CHAPTER III.—INFLEXION, ETC.

1. INFLEXION is the change made on the terminations of certain parts of speech, by means of which we are able to show how the words of a sentence are related to one another, how they are combined, and what is the nature of each proposition.

* It must be borne in mind that there are other words which connect clauses and sentences together, such as Relative Pronouns and Relative Adverbs.

2. In the declinable parts of speech the inflexions are regulated by the “accidents” of Gender, Number, and Case; and in verbs, by those of Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

GENDER.*

3. Animals are divided into two classes or *sexes*, the male and the female. Things without life have no distinction of sex. And thus we have three classes of things—viz., things of the male sex, things of the female sex, and things of neither sex.

4. In the names of things—i.e., substantives—there is a corresponding classification into Masculine Gender, Feminine Gender, and Neuter Gender. The word *neuter* means “neither.”

5. The name of an individual of the male sex is called a masculine substantive; of one of the female sex, a feminine substantive; and of one of neither sex, a neuter substantive.

6. When a word can be applied either to the male or the female animal of a class, it is said to be of the Common Gender: as, *pārens*, a parent, (either father or mother;) *cīvis*, a citizen, (either male or female;) *vātes*, a prophet, or prophetess. Such words are called masculine when applied to males, and feminine when applied to females.

7. An Epicene Noun is one which, while indicating an object that has sex, yet leaves the sex unspecified: as, *aquila*, an eagle; *passer*, a sparrow.†

8. Words are said to be of Doubtful Gender which are used sometimes in one gender and sometimes in another: as, *dies*, a day, (masc. or fem.)

NUMBER.

9. Number is that change in the form of a declinable word by means of which we are able to indicate whether we are speaking of one object, or of more than one.

10. There are two Numbers;—the Singular, used of one; the Plural, of more than one. Singular comes from the Latin word *singuli*, one by one; Plural, from *plus*, (gen. *plur-is*.) more.

* For the Rules of Gender, see Appendix.

† In the names of animals, we find that some are always, or almost always, fem.,—as, *vulpes*, a fox; *aquila*, an eagle, &c.; while others are as regularly masc.,—as, *passer*, a sparrow; *piscis*, a fish;—the Romans having, from some cause or other, associated with one class the male sex, and with another the female.

CASE.

11. Case is the form in which substantives, adjectives, and pronouns are used, for the purpose of expressing the relation in which they stand to other words in the sentence.

12. There are six Cases,—the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

CHAPTER IV.—SUBSTANTIVES.

SECTION I.

GENERAL REMARKS.

1. A SUBSTANTIVE (Noun) is a word which is used as the name of anything that we speak about: as, *servus*, a slave; *dŏmus*, a house; *bellum*, war; *justitĭa*, justice.

2. Substantives are of two kinds,—Common and Proper.

3. A Common Substantive is a word which can be used as the name of each individual of the members of a class: as, *mĭlĕs*, soldier, applicable to any soldier; *ĕquŭs*, horse, to any horse; *urbs*, city, to any city.

4. A Proper Substantive is a word which is used as the name of some special individual (person, animal, place, or thing): as, *Rŏmŭlus*, Romulus; *Rŏma*, Rome; *Bŭcĕphĕlus*, (the horse) Bucephalus.

5. Substantives are divided into five classes, called Declensions, according to the system of inflexions adopted in forming their cases. The declension to which a substantive belongs is known by the inflexion * of the genitive singular.

* Every declinable word may be divided into two parts—the *stem* and the *inflexion*. The stem is that part which remains unaltered throughout all the cases and numbers; as, *mens-* in *mens-a*. The inflexion is that part which suffers change; as, *-ae*, *-am*, *-ā*, *-arum*, *-is*, *-as*, &c. The stem of a noun may be ascertained by taking away the inflexion of the gen. sing.; e.g., from *mens-ae* take away *-ae*, and *mens-* remains as the stem. In the paradigms of inflected words the stem is separated from the inflexion by a dash—thus, *mens-ae*. Stem is here used in a popular sense: the stem of *mensa* is, strictly speaking, *mensa-*.

6. The Genitive Singular of the First Declension ends in *-ae*.

| | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|--------|-----|-----|--------------|
| ... | ... | ... | Second | ... | ... | <i>-i</i> . |
| ... | ... | ... | Third | ... | ... | <i>-is</i> . |
| ... | ... | ... | Fourth | ... | ... | <i>-us</i> . |
| ... | ... | ... | Fifth | ... | ... | <i>-ei</i> . |

7. The following general remarks are applicable to all the declensions :—

- (1.) The nom. and voc., both in the sing. and the plur., are the same in form, except in nouns in *-us* of the Second Declension.
- (2.) The dat. and abl. plur. are always alike.
- (3.) The acc. sing. always ends in *-m*, and the acc. plur. in *-s*, in masc. and fem. nouns.
- (4.) Neuter nouns have the acc. and voc. in each number the same as the nom., and in the plur. these (three) cases end in *-ā*.
- (5.) The gen. plur. ends in *-um*.

Obs. 1.—Other points of similarity in the several declensions will be observed by the student; *e.g.*, that in the Third, Fourth, and Fifth, the nom., acc., and voc. plur. are always the same; that in the First and Fifth the gen. and dat. sing. are the same, respectively; that the dat. and abl. sing. of the Second are identical; and that the dat. plur. of the first two ends in *-īs*, and of the other three, in *-bus*.

Obs. 2.—In learning the declensions of nouns, the student should at the same time learn carefully the inflexions of adjectives, which are precisely the same, with some slight exceptions to be detailed in their proper place. Thus, of the adj. *bōnus*, good, the fem., *bona*, is declined exactly like *mensa*; the masc., *bonus*, like *servus*; and the neut., *bonum*, like *mālum*.

N.B.—It is highly important that pupils should be accustomed from the very first to exemplify in practice the rules of quantity which guide them in versification. Thus we should distinguish *ēdo*, I eat, from *ēdo*, I put forth; *lēvis*, light, from *lēvis*, smooth; *pōpulus*, the people, from *pōpulus*, the poplar tree. To facilitate this exercise, the quantity of each syllable is marked in the following paradigms, except in a few cases which are provided for by the rules on p. 11, 6. The quantity of the stem syllables is the same in all the cases, and is therefore marked only in the nou.

SECTION II.

FIRST DECLENSION.

1. The nouns of this declension end in the nom. sing. in *-ā*, and in the gen. in *-ae*.* (See p. 14, note * ; and p. 15, N.B.)

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|--|--|
| <i>Nom.</i> Mēns-ā , fem., a table.† | Mēns-ae , tables. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Mens-ae , a table's, or of a table. | Mens-ārum , tables', or of tables. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Mens-ae , to or for a table. | Mens-īs , to or for tables. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Mens-ām , a table. | Mens-ās , tables. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Mens-ā , O table! | Mens-ae , O tables! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Mens-ā , from, with, in, or by a table. | Mens-īs , from, with, in, or by tables. |

2. A few nouns have *-ūbūs* in the dat. and abl. plur., as well as *-īs*. They are such as have a masculine of the *same stem* in the Second Declension: as, *fili-a*, f., a daughter; but *fili-us*, a son, of the Second. So the adjectives, *duo*, two, and *ambo*, both, have in their fem. *duābus* and *ambūbus*.

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|--|--|
| <i>Nom.</i> Fili-ā , fem., a daughter. | Fili-ae , daughters. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Fili-ae , a daughter's, or of a daughter. | Fili-ārum , daughters', or of daughters. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Fili-ae , to or for a daughter. | Fili-ābus , or filīīs , to or for |
| <i>Acc.</i> Fili-ām , a daughter. | Fili-as , daughters. [daughters. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Fili-ā , O daughter! | Fili-ae , O daughters! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Fili-ā , from, with, or by a daughter. | Fili-ābus , or filīīs , from, with, or by daughters. |

3. GENDER.—The nouns of the First Declension are fem.: as, *mensa*, table; but words denoting males are masc.: as, *nauta*, a sailor. Also names of rivers in *-a*, as *Sēquāna*, the Seine. But *Allia*, *Albāla*, and *Matrōna* are fem.

4. Adjectives of this declension are declined exactly like substantives. Thus, *Bōna*, fem. of *Bōnus*, p. 35.

* Greek nouns, of all declensions, have been omitted. They will be found in the Appendix, and more fully in the Larger Grammar of this Series.

† As there is no Article in Latin, *mensa* may mean either a table or the table, according to the sense required.

| SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. |
|-------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Bōn-ā , fem., good (woman, &c.) | Bōn-ae , good (women, &c.) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Bon-ae . | Bon-ārum . |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Bon-ae . | Bon-īs . |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Bon-ām . | Bon-ās |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Bon-ā . | Bon-ae . |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Bon-ā . | Bon-īs . |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

FEMININE.

| | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Āquil-a</i> , an eagle. | The three following like | <i>Ēqua</i> , a mare. | |
| <i>Fund-a</i> , a sling. | | <i>Filia</i> :— | <i>Serv-a</i> , a slave. |
| <i>Port-a</i> , a gate. | | <i>Dea</i> , a goddess. | |

MASCULINE.

| | | | | |
|------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <i>Agricol-a</i> , a farmer. | | <i>Collēg-a</i> , a colleague. | | <i>Poēt-a</i> , a poet. |
| <i>Belg-a</i> , a Belgian. | | <i>Naut-a</i> , a sailor. | | <i>Scrib-a</i> , a scribe. |

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE TOGETHER.

| | | | | |
|--|--|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| <i>Ancilla sēdūla</i> , a diligent maid-servant. | | <i>Mūla parva</i> , a small she-mule. | | <i>Puella pulchra</i> , a beautiful girl. |
| <i>Lūna plēna</i> , the full moon. | | <i>Porta aperta</i> , an open gate. | | |

SECTION III.

SECOND DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the Second Declension end in the nom. sing. in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir*, *-ur*, and *-um*. The gen. sing. ends in *-i*.

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Serv-ūs , masc., a slave. | Serv-ī , slaves. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Serv-ī , of a slave. | Serv-ōrum , of slaves. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Serv-ō , to or for a slave. | Serv-īs , to or for slaves. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Serv-ūm , a slave. | Serv-ōs , slaves. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Serv-ē , O slave! | Serv-ī , O slaves! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Serv-ō , from, &c., a slave. | Serv-īs , from, &c., slaves. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Agnus</i> , m., a lamb. | | <i>Campus</i> , m., a plain. | | <i>Magnus</i> , m. adj., great. |
| <i>Amicus</i> , m., a friend. | | <i>Cervus</i> , m., a stag. | | <i>Mālus</i> , f., an apple tree. |
| <i>Annus</i> , m., a year. | | <i>Hortus</i> , m., a garden. | | <i>Parvus</i> , m. adj., small. |
| <i>Asinus</i> , m., an ass. | | <i>Lūpus</i> , m., a wolf. | | <i>Rāmus</i> , m., a branch. |

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

| | | | | |
|--|--|---|--|--|
| <i>Amicus fīdus</i> , a faithful friend. | | <i>Hortus amplus</i> , a spacious garden. | | <i>Mālus parva</i> , a small apple tree. |
| | | | | |

2. Words ending in *-r* are declined like *servus*. They seem to have ended originally in *-us*, but the inflexion of the nom. and of the voc. has been lost. Thus :—

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Pŭēr , masc., a boy. | Pŭēr-ī , boys. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Puēr-ī , of a boy. | Puer-ōrum , of boys. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Puer-ō , to or for a boy. | Puer-īs , to or for boys. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Puer-ŭm , a boy. | Puer-ōs , boys. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Puer , O boy! | Puer-ī , O boys! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Puer-ō , from, &c., a boy. | Puer-īs , from, &c., boys. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|---|--|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Asper</i> , m. adj., rough. | <i>Liber</i> , m. adj., free. | <i>Miser</i> , m. adj., wretched. |
| <i>Libēr</i> , m., the god Liber or Bacchus. (No plur.) | <i>Libēr-ī</i> , -ōrum, m., (no sing.) children. | <i>Tēner</i> , m. adj., tender. |

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <i>Gēner cārus</i> , a dear son-in-law. | | <i>Sōcer beātus</i> , a happy father-in-law. |
|---|--|--|

3. In most nouns ending in *-r*, the *e* of the nom. is not part of the stem, but is merely euphonic, and is lost in the oblique cases (see note *, p. 20): as,—

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|---|
| <i>Nom.</i> Māgistēr , masc., a master. | Māgistr-ī , masters. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Magistr-ī , of a master. | Magistr-ōrum , of masters. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Magistr-ō , to or for a master. | Magistr-īs , to or for masters. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Magistr-ŭm , a master. | Magistr-ōs , masters. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Magister , O master! | Magistr-ī , O masters! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Magistr-ō , from, &c., a master. | Magistr-īs , from, &c., masters. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Āgēr</i> , m., a field. | <i>Cāpēr</i> , m., a he-goat. | <i>Piger</i> , m. adj., slothful. |
| <i>Alexander</i> , m., Alexander. | <i>Niger</i> , m. adj., black. | <i>Sācer</i> , m. adj., sacred. |

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

| | | |
|------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Aper fērus</i> , a savage boar. | | <i>Liber parvus</i> , a small book. |
|------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|

4. Similarly are declined *vir*, and its compounds, *triumvir*, *decemvir*, &c. *Lēvīr*, a husband's brother, brother-in-law, is the only other word of this declension ending in *-ir*.

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Vīr, a man. | Vīr-ī, men. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Vīr-ī, of a man. | Vir-ōrum, of men. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Vir-ō, to or for a man. | Vir-īs, to or for men. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Vir-ūm, a man. | Vir-ōs, men. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Vir, O man! | Vir-ī, O men! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Vir-ō, from, &c., a man. | Vir-īs, from, &c., men. |

5. All words in *-um* are neuter. The following rule must be observed in their declension:—

Neuter nouns have the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* alike in each number; and in the plural these cases end in *-ā*.

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|----------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Māl-ūm, neut., an apple. | Māl-ā, apples. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Māl-ī, of an apple. | Mal-ōrum, of apples. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Māl-ō, to or for an apple. | Mal-īs, to or for apples. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Māl-ūm, an apple. | Māl-ā, apples. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Māl-ūm, O apple! | Māl-ā, O apples! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Māl-ō, from, &c., an apple. | Mal-īs, from, &c., apples. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Collum</i> , n., the neck. | <i>Ōrum</i> , n., an egg. | <i>Signum</i> , n., a statue, sign. |
| <i>Dōnum</i> , n., a gift. | <i>Pōcūlum</i> , n., a cup, bowl. | <i>Templum</i> , n., a temple. |
| <i>Fōllium</i> , n., a leaf. | | |

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Bellum longum</i> , a tedious war. | <i>Arvum latum</i> , a wide field. |
| <i>Ovum magnum</i> , a large egg. | <i>Oppidum parvum</i> , a small town. |

6. GENDER.—Substantives in *-us*, *-er*, and *-ur* are generally masc.; those in *-um* are neut.

7. *Deus*, god, has the *voc. sing.* like the *nom.*; in the *nom.* and *voc. plur.* it has *dii* (contracted into *di*) as well as *dei*; and in the *dat.* and *abl.*, *diis* (contracted into *dis*) as well as *deis*. Thus:—

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <i>Nom.</i> Dē-ūs, m., a god. | De-i, Di-i, or Dī, gods. |
| <i>Gen.</i> De-ī, of a god. | Dē-orum, of gods. |
| <i>Dat.</i> De-ō, to or for a god. | Dē-īs, Di-īs, or Dīs, to or for gods. |
| <i>Acc.</i> De-ūm, a god. | De-ōs, gods. |
| <i>Voc.</i> De-ūs, O god! | De-i, Di-i, or Dī, O gods! |
| <i>Abl.</i> De-ō, from, &c., a god. | De-īs, Di-īs, or Dīs, from, &c., gods. |

Obs.—In poetry, and in solemn religious forms (as treaties, &c.), the *voc. sing.* of other words in *-us* is often made like the *nom.*

8. Adjectives which have the masc. in *-us* or *-er*, and the neut. in *-um*, are declined like nouns of this declension. The masc. in *-us* has the same inflexions as *servus*; in *-er*, the same as *puer* or *magister*; and the neut. in *-um*, the same as *mālum*. The fem. form in *-ā* belongs to the First Declension, and follows the inflexions of *mensa*. Thus, *bonus* (m.), *bona* (f.), and *bonum* (n.), good; *tener* (m), *tenera* (f.), and *tenerum* (n.), tender. (See p. 35.)

SECTION IV.

THIRD DECLENSION.

1. In the First and Second Declensions the stem of a noun may be easily distinguished, even in the nom.; but in the Third Declension it is so disguised, by the omission of consonants or the modification of vowels, that it cannot be known without reference to one of the oblique* cases. The following arrangement groups the nouns of this declension in Seven Classes, according to the change which takes place on the stem in the nom.

2. The gen. sing. ends in *-is*, and the dat. in *-i*. It will be observed that the nom., acc., and voc. plur. are the same in form.

CLASS I.

3. The FIRST CLASS contains those nouns which have the pure stem † in the nom.: as,—

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> | Hōnōr, m., honour. | Hōnōr-ēs, honours. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Honōr-īs, of honour. | Honor-um, of honours. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Honor-ī, to or for honour. | Honor-ībūs, to or for honours. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Honor-ēm, honour. | Honor-ēs, honours. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Honor, O honour! | Honor-ēs, O honours! |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Honor-ē, from, &c., honour. | Honor-ībūs, from, &c., honours. |

So also *anser*, a goose, m. or f. :—

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|------------------|-----------|-----------|
| (2.) <i>Nom.</i> | Ansēr. | Ansēr-ēs. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Ansēr-īs. | Ansēr-um. |
| | &c. | &c. |

* *i.e.*, gen., dat., acc., abl.

† See p. 14, note *.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <i>Anser, ansēr-is, m. or f., a</i> goose. | <i>Exul, exūl-is, m. or f., an</i> exile. | <i>Mulier, mulier-is, f., a</i> woman. |
| <i>Arbor, arbōr-is, f., a tree.</i> | <i>Fūr, fūr-is, m., a thief.</i> | <i>Pastor, pastōr-is, m., a</i> shepherd. |
| <i>Caesar, Caesār-is, m., Cae-</i> sar. (No plur.) | (Gen. plur. -um or -ium.) | |
| <i>Consul, consūl-is, m., a consul</i> | <i>Grāvior, grāvior-is, m. and</i> f. adj., heavier. (Abl. sing. | <i>Sōl, Sōl-is, m., the sun.</i> (Wants gen. plur.) |
| <i>Dōlor, dolōr-is, m., grief.</i> | -e or -ī; gen. plur. -um.) | <i>Tīmōr, tīmōr-is, m., fear.</i> |

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

| | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Fūr mālus, a wicked thief.</i> | <i>Sōl clārus, a bright sun.</i> |
| <i>Pastor fīdus, a faithful shepherd.</i> | <i>Sōror blanda, a kind sister.</i> |

4. To this class belong nouns like *pāter* and *māter*, which omit *e* in the oblique cases, so that the gen. is *patris*, and not *pateris*.

Obs.—*Iter, n.*, a journey, has *itīnēr-is*, from the old form of the nom, *itiner*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

| | |
|--|---|
| (3.) <i>Nom. Frātēr, m., a brother.</i> | <i>Frātr-ēs, brothers.</i> |
| <i>Gen. Fratr-īs, of a brother.</i> | <i>Fratr-um, of brothers.</i> |
| <i>Dat. Fratr-ī, to or for a brother.</i> | <i>Fratr-ibus, to or for brothers.</i> |
| <i>Acc. Fratr-ēm, a brother.</i> | <i>Fratr-ēs, brothers.</i> |
| <i>Voc. Frater, O brother!</i> | <i>Fratr-ēs, O brothers!</i> |
| <i>Abl. Fratr-ē, from, &c., a</i> <i>brother.</i> | <i>Fratr-ibus, from, &c.,</i> <i>brothers.</i> |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|
| <i>Accipiter, accipitris, m., a</i> hawk. | <i>Māter, matris, f., a mother.</i> | <i>Ūter, utris, m., a bag.</i> |
| <i>Imber,* imbris, m., rain.</i> | <i>Pāter, patris, m., a father.</i> | <i>Venter, ventris, m., the belly.</i> |

5. See rule for the inflexion of neuters, p. 19, art. 5.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

| | |
|--|---|
| (4.) <i>Nom. Ānīmāl, n., an animal.</i> | <i>Ānīmāl-iā, animals.</i> |
| <i>Gen. Animāl-īs, of an animal.</i> | <i>Animal-ium, of animals.</i> |
| <i>Dat. Animal-ī, to an animal.</i> | <i>Animal-ibus, to animals.</i> |
| <i>Acc. Animal, an animal.</i> | <i>Animal-ia, animals.</i> |
| <i>Voc. Animal, O animal!</i> | <i>Animal-ia, O animals!</i> |
| <i>Abl. Animal-ī,† from, &c., an</i> <i>animal.</i> | <i>Animal-ibus, from, &c., ani-</i> <i>mals.</i> |

* *Imber, uter, and venter* have -ium in the gen. plur. *Imber* has the abl. sing. in -e or -ī.
† Neuters in -e, -ī, -al, and -ar, have -ī in the abl. sing.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| <i>Aequor</i> , * <i>aequōr-is</i> , n., the sea. | <i>Fulgur</i> , <i>fulgūr-is</i> , n., lightning. | <i>Vās</i> , <i>vās-is</i> , n., a vessel. (Pl. <i>vas-a, -orum</i> , 2nd Decl.) |
| <i>Cādāver</i> , <i>cadavēr-is</i> , n., a corpse. | <i>Pāpāver</i> , <i>papavēr-is</i> , n., a poppy. | <i>Vectigal</i> , <i>vectigāl-is</i> , n., revenue. |
| <i>Calcar</i> , <i>calcār-is</i> , n., a spur. | <i>Uber</i> , <i>ūbēr-is</i> , n., an udder. | <i>Ver</i> , <i>vēr-is</i> , n., spring. (No plur.) |

6. The adjective *par*, equal to, is declined in its masc. and fem. like *honor*, and in its neut. like *animal*. (See p. 39.)

CLASS II.

7. To the SECOND CLASS belong those nouns which, in the nom., add a letter (usually *s* or *e*) to the pure stem : as,—

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> Urb-s , f., a city. | Urb-ēs , <i>cities</i> . |
| <i>Gen.</i> Urb-īs , of a city. | Urb-ium , of cities. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Urb-ī , to or for a city. | Urb-ibus , to or for cities. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Urb-ēm , a city. | Urb-ēs , cities. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Urb-s , O city! | Urb-ēs , O cities! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Urb-ē , from, &c., a city. | Urb-ibus , from, &c., cities. |

Obs.—Monosyllabic nouns whose stem ends in two consonants have *-ium* in the gen. plur.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <i>Grūs</i> , † <i>grū-is</i> , m. or f., a crane. | <i>Īnops</i> , <i>īnōp-is</i> , m., and f. adj., poor. † | <i>Sūs</i> , † <i>su-is</i> , m. or f., a pig. |
| <i>Hiems</i> , <i>hiēm-is</i> , f., winter. (Wants g., d., and ab. pl.) | <i>Stirps</i> , <i>stirp-is</i> , f., (or m.) a root, or race. | <i>Trabs</i> , <i>trāb-is</i> , f., a beam. |

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|--|------------------------------------|
| (2.) <i>Nom.</i> Rēt-ē , n., a net. | Rēt-iā , <i>nets</i> . |
| <i>Gen.</i> Rēt-īs , of a net. | Ret-ium , of nets. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Ret-ī , to or for a net. | Ret-ibus , to or for nets. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Ret-ē , a net. | Ret-iā , nets. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Ret-ē , O net! | Ret-iā , O nets! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Ret-ī , § from, &c., a net. | Ret-ibus , from, &c., nets. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <i>Grāv-ē</i> , <i>grāv-is</i> , n. adj., heavy. | <i>Mīle</i> , <i>mīl-is</i> , n. adj., mild. | <i>Ōvil-ē</i> , <i>ōvil-is</i> , n., a sheep-fold. |
| <i>Mār-ē</i> , <i>mār-is</i> , n., the sea. | <i>Mōnīl-ē</i> , <i>monīl-is</i> , n., a necklace. | <i>Sēdīl-ē</i> , <i>sēdīl-is</i> , n., a seat. |

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <i>Mare altum</i> , the deep sea. | <i>Rete rārum</i> , a wide-meshed net. |
|-----------------------------------|--|

* *Aequor*, *cādāver*, *fulgur*, *pāpāver*, and *uber* have the gen. plur. in *um*.

† *Grus* and *īnops* have *-um* in gen. plur.

‡ Gen. plur. *-um*; dat. and abl. *subus*, contracted for *suibus* § See p. 21, note †.

8. As *x* is equal to *cs* or *gs* (see p. 10, 7), all nouns ending in *x* belong to this class: as, *dux* = *duc-s*; *lex* = *leg-s*.

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (3.) <i>Nom.</i> | Lex , f., a law. | Lēg-ēs , laws. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Lēg-is , of a law. | Leg-um , of laws. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Leg-i , to or for a law. | Leg-ibus , to or for laws. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Leg-em , a law. | Leg-es , laws. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Lex , O law! | Leg-es , O laws! |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Leg-e , from, &c., a law. | Leg-ibus , from, &c., laws. |
| (4.) <i>Nom.</i> | Dux , m. or f., a leader. | Dūc-ēs , leaders. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Dūc-is , of a leader. | Duc-um , of leaders. |
| | &c. | &c. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| <i>Arx</i> , arc-is,* f., a citadel. | <i>Conjux</i> , conjūg-is, m. or f., a consort. | <i>Pax</i> , pāc-is, f., peace. (Wants gen. plur.) |
| <i>Atror</i> , atrōc-is, m. and f. adj., savage. | <i>Felix</i> , felic-is, m. and f. adj., happy. | <i>Radix</i> , radic-is, f., a root. |
| <i>Audax</i> , audāc-is, m. and f. adj., daring. | <i>Grex</i> , grēg-is, m., a flock. | <i>Rex</i> , rēg-is, m., a king. |

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| <i>Conjux felix</i> , a happy consort. | <i>Pax longa</i> , a long peace. |
| <i>Grex formōsus</i> , a beautiful flock. | <i>Rex savus</i> , a cruel king. |

9. The adjective *fēlix*, happy, is similarly declined. (See p. 39.)

CLASS III.

10. In the THIRD CLASS are included those nouns which have a vowel inserted in the nom., between the stem and the inflexion: as, *caed-e-s*, for *caed-s*, gen. *caed-is*.† The gen. plur. usually ends in *-ium*.

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|--|
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> | Clād-ēs , f., a defeat. | Clād-ēs , defeats. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Clād-īs , of a defeat. | Clād-ium , of defeats. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Clād-ī , to or for a defeat. | Clād-ībūs , to or for defeats. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Clād-ēm , a defeat. | Clād-ēs , defeats. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Clād-ēs , O defeat! | Clād-ēs , O defeats! |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Clād-ē , from, &c., a defeat. | Clād-ībūs , from, &c., defeats. |

* *Arx*, *atrōr*, *audax*, and *felix* have the gen. plur. in *-ium*. The last three of these have the abl. sing. in *-e* or *-i*, though *-i* is more common.

† If the vowel were not inserted, the dentals would either be rejected before *s*, or assimilated to it.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

Nūbēs, nūb-is, f., a cloud.
Rūpēs, rūp-is, f., a rock.

Fulpēs, vulp-is, f., a fox.
Vātēs, vāt-is, m. or f., a prophet.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

| | | |
|------------------|---|---|
| (2.) <i>Nom.</i> | Host-īs, m. or f., an enemy. | Host-ēs, enemies. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Host-is, of an enemy. | Host-ium, of enemies. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Host-i, to or for an enemy. | Host-ibus, to or for enemies. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Host-em, an enemy. | Host-es, enemies. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Host-is, O enemy! | Host-es, O enemies! |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Host-e, from, &c., an enemy. | Host-ibus, from, &c., enemies. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

Amnis, amn-is, † m., a river.
Auris, aur-is, f., an ear.
Avis, av-is, f., a bird.
Brēvis, brēv-is, m. and f. adj., short.
Civis, civ-is, m. or f., a citizen.

Collis, coll-is, m., a hill.
Grāvis, grāv-is, m. and f. adj., heavy.
Lēvis, lēv-is, m. and f. adj., light.
Mēsis, mēn-is, m., a month.
Mītis, mīt-is, m. and f. adj., mild.

Obs.—Some words in *-is* have *-im* in the acc. sing., and *-i* in the abl.; and some have *-em* or *-im*, and *-e* or *-i*.

11. Many adjectives are declined in the masc. and fem. like *hostis*, and in the neut. like *rete*. (See *gravis*, p. 38.)

CLASS IV.

12. The FOURTH CLASS includes those nouns which drop the last letter of the stem in the nom.: as, *sermo* (for *sermon*), gen. *sermōn-is*; *lac* (for *lact*), gen. *lact-is*; *cor* (for *cord*), gen. *cord-is*; *poēma* (for *poemat*), gen. *poēmāt-is*; *mel* (for *mell*), gen. *mell-is*; *ōs* (for *oss*), gen. *oss-is*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

| | | |
|------------------|---|---|
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> | Sermo, m., conversation. | Sermōn-ēs, conversations. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Sermōn-is, of conversation. | Sermōn-um, of conversations. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Sermōn-i, to conversation. | Sermōn-ibus, to conversations. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Sermōn-ēm, conversation. | Sermōn-ēs, conversations. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Sermo, O conversation! | Sermōn-ēs, O conversations! |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Sermōn-ē, from, &c., conversation. | Sermōn-ibus, from, &c., conversations. |

* *Vates* has *-um* in the gen. plur.

† *Amnis, avis, civis, and collis* have either *-e* or *-i* (though usually *-e*) in the abl. sing.; but *gravis, lēvis, mītis, and brēvis* have *-i* only. *Mēsis* has sometimes *-um* in the gen. plur.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Latro</i> , m., a robber. | <i>Līgo</i> , m., a mattock. | <i>Praeco</i> , m., a public crier. |
| <i>Lēgio</i> , f., a legion. | <i>Orātio</i> , f., a speech. | <i>Praedo</i> , m., a robber. |
| <i>Leo</i> , m., a lion. | <i>Pāvo</i> , m., a peacock. | <i>Rātio</i> , f., reason. |

SINGULAR.

- (2.) *Nom.* Cōr, neut., the heart.
Gen. Cōrd-īs, of the heart.
Dat. Cōrd-ī, to or for the heart.
Acc. Cor, the heart.
Voc. Cor, O heart!
Abl. Cōrd-e, from, &c., the heart.

PLURAL.

- Cōrd-ā, hearts.
(Cōrd-īum, or -um, of hearts.)
Cōrd-ībus, to or for hearts.
Cōrd-ā, hearts.
Cōrd-ā, O hearts!
Cōrd-ībus, from, &c., hearts.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| <i>Dogma</i> , <i>dogmāt-is</i> , n., an opinion. | <i>Lāc</i> , <i>lact-is</i> , n., milk. (No pl.) | <i>Ōs</i> , <i>oss-is</i> , n., a bone. (Gen. plur. in -ium.) |
| <i>Fēl</i> , <i>fell-is</i> , n., bile. (No gen. plur.) | <i>Mēl</i> , <i>mell-is</i> , n., honey. (Wants gen., dat., and abl. plur.) | <i>Poēma</i> , <i>poēmāt-is</i> , n., a poem. |

Obs.—Words in -*ma*, like *poēma*, usually make the dat. and abl. plur. in -*is*, instead of -*ibus*; as *poēmātis*, for *poēmātibus*.

CLASS V.

13. To the FIFTH CLASS belong those nouns which omit *d* or *t* in the nom., before the final *s*: as, *laus* (for *laud-s*), gen. *laud-is*, f., praise; *frons* (for *front-s*), gen. *front-is*, f., the forehead. In one word *n* is dropped; viz., *sanguis* (for *sanguin-s*), gen. *sanguin-is*, m., blood.

SINGULAR.

- (1.) *Nom.* Laus, f., praise.
Gen. Laud-īs, of praise.
Dat. Laud-ī, to or for praise.
Acc. Laud-ēm, praise.
Voc. Laus, O praise!
Abl. Laud-ē, from, &c., praise.

PLURAL.

- Laud-ēs, praises.
Laud-um, of praises.
Laud-ībus, to or for praises.
Laud-ēs, praises.
Laud-ēs, O praises!
Laud-ībus, from, &c., praises.
- (2.) *Nom.* Frons, f., the forehead.
Gen. Front-īs, of the forehead.
Dat. Front-ī, to the forehead.
Acc. Front-ēm, the forehead.
Voc. Frons, O forehead!
Abl. Front-ē, from, &c., the forehead.
- Front-ēs, foreheads.
Front-ium, of foreheads.
Front-ībus, to foreheads.
Front-ēs, foreheads.
Front-ēs, O foreheads!
Front-ībus, from, &c., foreheads.

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (3.) <i>Nom.</i> | Lāpīs, m., a stone. | Lāpīd-ēs, stones. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Lāpīd-is, of a stone. | Lapīd-um, of stones. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Lapīd-i, to or for a stone. | Lapīd-ibus, to or for stones. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Lapīd-em, a stone. | Lapīd-es, stones. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Lapīd, O stone! | Lapīd-es, O stones! |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Lapīd-e, from, &c., a stone. | Lapīd-ibus, from, &c., stones. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <i>Aetas</i> ,* <i>aetāt-is</i> , f., age. | <i>Dōs</i> , <i>dōt-is</i> , f., a dowry. | <i>Pars</i> , <i>part-is</i> , f., a part. |
| <i>Amans</i> , <i>amant-is</i> , m. and f. adj., loving. | <i>Fons</i> , <i>font-is</i> , m., a fountain. | <i>Pēs</i> , <i>pēd-is</i> , m., a foot. |
| <i>Ars</i> , <i>art-is</i> , f., art. | <i>Frons</i> , <i>frond-is</i> , f., a leaf. | <i>Sālūs</i> , <i>sālūt-is</i> , f., safety. (No plur.) |
| <i>Civitas</i> , <i>civitat-is</i> , f., a state or city. | <i>Glans</i> , <i>gland is</i> f., an acorn. | <i>Sāpiens</i> , <i>sapient-is</i> , m. and f. adj., wise. |
| <i>Custōs</i> , <i>custōd-is</i> , m. or f., a keeper. | <i>Mens</i> , <i>ment-is</i> , f., the mind. | <i>Virtūs</i> , <i>virtūt-is</i> , f., virtue. |
| | <i>Mors</i> , <i>mort-is</i> , f., death. | |

14. *Obs.*—All participles ending in *-ns*, as *amans*, loving; *monens*, advising, &c.; and all adjectives of similar termination, are declined like nouns of this class. (See p. 40.)

CLASS VI.

15. The SIXTH CLASS embraces those nouns in which the final vowel of the stem is changed in the nom.: as, stem *nōmĕn-*, but nom. *nōmĕn*; stem *cāpĭt-*, but nom. *cāpĭt*.

| | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> | Nōmĕn, n., a name. | Nōmĭn-ĕ, names. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Nōmĭn-ĭs, of a name. | Nomĭn-um, of names. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Nomĭn-i, to or for a name. | Nomĭn-ibus, to or for names. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Nomĕn, a name. | Nomĭn-a, names. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Nomĕn, O name! | Nomĭn-a, O names! |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Nomĭn-e, from, &c., a name. | Nomĭn-ibus, from, &c., names. |
| (2.) <i>Nom.</i> | Cāpĭt, n., a head. | Cāpĭt-ĕ, heads. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Cāpĭt-is, of a head. | Capĭt-um, of heads. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Capĭt-i, to or for a head. | Capĭt-ibus, to or for heads. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Caput, a head. | Capĭt-a, heads. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Caput, O head! | Capĭt-a, O heads! |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Capĭt-e, from, &c., a head. | Capĭt-ibus, from, &c., heads. |

* *Aetas* and *civitas* have *-um* oftener than *-ium* in the gen. plur. *Amans* and *sapiens* have *-ium* oftener than *-um*. *Custos*, *pes*, and *virtus* have *-um* only; the rest have *-ium*. *Pars* has *-e*, and sometimes *-i*, in the abl. sing.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|--|
| <i>Ārmēn</i> , <i>carniū-is</i> , n., a poem. | | <i>Flāmen</i> , <i>flūmīn-is</i> , n., a river. | | <i>Nāmen</i> , <i>nāmīn-is</i> , n., a deity. |
| <i>Ēbūr</i> , <i>ēbūr-is</i> , n., ivory. (Plur. rare.) | | <i>Grāmen</i> , <i>grāmīn-is</i> , n., grass. | | <i>Pecten</i> , <i>pectīn-is</i> , m., a comb. |

ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

| | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Carmen grātum</i> , a pleasing poem. | | <i>Pecten ēburneus</i> , an ivory comb. | | <i>Grāmen rēcens</i> , fresh grass. |
| | | | | |

CLASS VII.

16. In the SEVENTH CLASS are ranged those nouns in which the final letter of the stem is changed, in the nom., into *s*: as, *mōs* (for *mor*), gen. *mōr-is*; *flōs* (for *flor*), gen. *flōr-is*:—

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

| | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> Flōs, m., a flower. | Flōr-ēs, flowers. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Flōr-īs, of a flower. | Flor-um, of flowers. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Flor-ī, to or for a flower. | Flor-ibus, to or for flowers. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Flor-ēm, a flower. | Flor-ēs, flowers. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Flos, O flower! | Flor-ēs, O flowers! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Flor-ē, from, &c., a flower. | Flor-ibus, from, &c., flowers. |
| | |
| (2.) <i>Nom.</i> Crūs, n., a leg. | Crūr-ā, legs. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Crūr-is, of a leg. | Crur-um, of legs. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Crur-i, to or for a leg. | Crur-ibus, to or for legs. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Crus, a leg. | Crur-a, legs. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Crus, O leg! | Crur-a, O legs! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Crur-e, from, &c., a leg. | Crur-ibus, from, &c., legs. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | | | |
|--|--|---|--|--|
| <i>Aēs</i> , <i>aer-is</i> , n., brass. (Wants gen. plur.) | | <i>Mōs</i> , <i>mōr-is</i> , m., custom. | | <i>Ōs</i> , <i>ōr-is</i> , n., the face, mouth. (Wants gen. plur.) |
| <i>Jus</i> , <i>jūr-is</i> , n., law, right. | | <i>Mūs</i> , <i>mūr-is</i> , m. or f., a mouse. | | <i>Rūs</i> , <i>rūr-is</i> , n.; the country. |
| <i>Mās</i> ,* <i>mār-is</i> , m., a male. | | | | <i>Tellūs</i> , <i>tellūr-is</i> , f., the earth. |

COMPOUND VARIETIES.

17. The Seven Classes thus set forth comprehend all the important *simple* varieties of this declension; but there are many nouns

* *Mas* and *mus* have *-ium* in the gen. plur. *Rus* has both *-e* and *-i* in the abl. sing.; it wants the gen., dat., and abl. plur.

not yet exemplified, which exhibit the peculiarities of more than one class. Thus (1.) *Judex*, which makes the gen. *jūdic-is*, adds *s* to the stem, like the nouns of Class II.; and also changes the last vowel of the stem, like those of Class VI. So also *vertex*, gen. *vertic-is*; *princeps*, gen. *princip-is*; and many others. (2.) *Homo*, *cardo*, *imago*, and such like, drop the final *n* of the stem, like *sermo*, Class IV.; and change the last vowel of the stem, like Class VI. (3.) *Milēs*, *equēs*, *divēs*, and many others, omit *t* before *s*, like Class V.; and change the final vowel of the stem, like Class VI. (4.) *Corpus*, *tempus*, *vulnus*, *funus*, &c., change the last vowel of the stem, as the nouns of Class VI.; and substitute *s* for *r*, like those of Class VII. Thus:—

| | Classes. | Nom. | Stem. | Gen. | English. |
|------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| (1.) | II. and VI. | Judex , | Judic- , | Judic-is , | <i>a judge</i> . |
| (2.) | IV. and VI. | Homo , | Homin- , | Homin-is , | <i>a man</i> . |
| (3.) | V. and VI. | Miles , | Milit- , | Milit-is , | <i>a soldier</i> . |
| (4.) | VI. and VII. | Corpus , | Corpor- , | Corpor-is , | <i>a body</i> . |

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|------|-------------|--|--|
| (1.) | <i>Nom.</i> | Jūdex , m., <i>a judge</i> . | Jūdīc-ēs , <i>judges</i> . |
| | <i>Gen.</i> | Jūdīc-is , <i>of a judge</i> . | Judic-um , <i>of judges</i> . |
| | <i>Dat.</i> | Judic-i , <i>to a judge</i> . | Judic-ibus , <i>to judges</i> . |
| | <i>Acc.</i> | Judic-em , <i>a judge</i> . | Judic-ēs , <i>judges</i> . |
| | <i>Voc.</i> | Judex , <i>O judge!</i> | Judic-ēs , <i>O judges!</i> |
| | <i>Abl.</i> | Judic-e , <i>from, &c., a judge</i> . | Judic-ibus , <i>from, &c., judges</i> . |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <i>Index</i> , <i>indic-is</i> , m., an in- former. | <i>Princeps</i> ,* <i>princip-is</i> , m. and f adj., chief. | <i>Vertex</i> , <i>vertic-is</i> , m., the summit. |
| <i>Pollux</i> , <i>polluc-is</i> , m., the thumb. | | |
| | <i>Rēmex</i> , <i>rēmig-is</i> , m., an oarsman. | |

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|------|-------------|---|---|
| (2.) | <i>Nom.</i> | Hōmo , m. or f., <i>a man</i> (or Hōmīn-ēs , <i>men</i> .) | Hōmīn-ēs , <i>men</i> . |
| | <i>Gen.</i> | Hōmīn-is , <i>of a man</i> . [<i>woman</i> .] | Homīn-um , <i>of men</i> . |
| | <i>Dat.</i> | Homīn-ī , <i>to a man</i> . | Homīn-ibus , <i>to men</i> . |
| | <i>Acc.</i> | Homīn-ēm , <i>a man</i> . | Homīn-ēs , <i>men</i> . |
| | <i>Voc.</i> | Homo , <i>O man!</i> | Homīn-ēs , <i>O men!</i> |
| | <i>Abl.</i> | Homīn-ē , <i>from, &c., a man</i> . | Homīn-ibus , <i>from, &c., men</i> . |

* Abl. sing. in *-e* only; gen. plur. in *-um*.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | | | |
|---|---|--|--|---|
| <i>Arundo</i> , <i>arundīn-is</i> , f., a reed. | <i>Īmāgo</i> , <i>īmāgīn-is</i> , f., an image. | <i>Ordo</i> , <i>ordīn-is</i> , m., order. | | |
| <i>Cardo</i> , <i>cardīn-is</i> , m., a hinge. | | | <i>Nēmo</i> , <i>nēmīn-is</i> , no one. (Wants voc. sing. and all the plur.; abl. sing. rare.) | <i>Virgo</i> , <i>virgīn-is</i> , f., a maiden. |
| <i>Grando</i> , <i>grandīn-is</i> , f., hail. | | | | |

Obs.—*Caro*, f., flesh, stem *carīn-*, drops the *i* in the oblique cases; as, gen. *carnīs*, dat. *carnī*, &c.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|--|--|
| (3.) <i>Nom.</i> Milēs , m., a soldier. | Milit-ēs , soldiers. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Milit-is , of a soldier. | Milit-um , of soldiers. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Milit-i , to or for a soldier. | Milit-ibus , to or for soldiers. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Milit-em , a soldier. | Milit-ēs , soldiers. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Miles , O soldier! | Milit-ēs , O soldiers! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Milit-e , from, &c., a soldier. | Milit-ibus , from, &c., soldiers. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <i>Cespēs</i> , <i>cespīt-is</i> , m., turf. | <i>Ēquēs</i> , <i>ēquīt-is</i> , m., a horse-man. | <i>Obsēs</i> , <i>obsīd-is</i> , m. or f., a hostage. |
| <i>Cōmēs</i> , <i>cōmīt-is</i> , m. or f., a companion | | |

18. The adjective *dives* is declined like *miles* in the masc. and fem. The neut. follows the usual rule. (See p. 19, 5.)

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- | | |
|---|---|
| (4.) <i>Nom.</i> Corpus , n., a body. | Corpōr-ā , bodies. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Corpōr-is , of a body. | Corpōr-um , of bodies. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Corpōr-i , to or for a body. | Corpōr-ibus , to or for bodies. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Corpus , a body. | Corpōr-a , bodies. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Corpus , O body! | Corpōr-a , O bodies! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Corpōr-e , from, &c., a body. | Corpōr-ibus , from, &c., bodies. |
| (5.) <i>Nom.</i> Vulnus , n., a wound. | Vulnēr-a , wounds. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Vulnēr-is , of a wound. | Vulnēr-um , of wounds. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Vulnēr-i , to or for a wound. | Vulnēr-ibus , to or for wounds. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Vulnus , a wound. | Vulnēr-a , wounds. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Vulnus , O wound! | Vulnēr-a , O wounds! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Vulnēr-e , from, &c., a wound. | Vulnēr-ibus , from, &c., wounds. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| <i>Dēcūs</i> , <i>dēcōr-is</i> , n., beauty. | <i>Mūnus</i> , <i>mūnēr-is</i> , n., a gift. | <i>Pulvis</i> , <i>pulvēr-is</i> , m., dust. |
| <i>Frīgus</i> , <i>frīgōr-is</i> , n., cold. | | |
| <i>Gēnūs</i> , <i>gēnēr-is</i> , n., a kind. | <i>Ōpūs</i> , <i>ōpēr-is</i> , n., a work. | <i>Sidūs</i> , <i>sīdēr-is</i> , n., a constellation. |
| <i>Grāvius</i> , (gen.) <i>graviōr-is</i> , (n. adj.) heavier. | | |
| <i>Lātus</i> , <i>lātēr-is</i> , n., a side. | | |

19. The adjective *gravior*, heavier, is similarly declined; the masc. and fem. like *honor*, and the neut. like *corpus*. (See p. 38.)

20. A few nouns are quite irregular, and cannot be placed under any one of the above classes. Their forms are therefore given separately:—

| | SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. |
|------|---|--|-------------------------------|
| (1.) | <i>Nom.</i> Bōs, m. or f., <i>an ox or cow.</i> | | Bōv-ēs, <i>oxen or cows.</i> |
| | <i>Gen.</i> Bōv-is. | | Bō-um, (<i>for bov-um</i>). |
| | <i>Dat.</i> Bōv-i. | | Būb-us, or bōbus. |
| | <i>Acc.</i> Bōv-em. | | Bōv-ēs. |
| | <i>Voc.</i> Bōs. | | Bōv-ēs. |
| | <i>Abl.</i> Bōv-e. | | Būb-us, or bōbus. |
| (2.) | <i>Nom.</i> Jūpiter, m., <i>Jupiter.</i> | | ———— |
| | <i>Gen.</i> Jōv-is. | | ———— |
| | <i>Dat.</i> Jov-i. | | ———— |
| | <i>Acc.</i> Jov-em. | | ———— |
| | <i>Voc.</i> Jupiter. | | ———— |
| | <i>Abl.</i> Jov-e. | | ———— |
| (3.) | <i>Nom.</i> Sēnex, m. or f., <i>an old man,</i> | | Sēn-ēs. |
| | <i>Gen.</i> Sēn-is. [or woman.] | | Sen-um. |
| | <i>Dat.</i> Sen-i. | | Sen-ibus. |
| | <i>Acc.</i> Sen-em. | | Sen-es. |
| | <i>Voc.</i> Senex. | | Sen-es. |
| | <i>Abl.</i> Sen-e. | | Sen-ibus. |
| (4.) | <i>Nom.</i> Vis, f., <i>strength.</i> | | Vir-ēs. |
| | <i>Gen.</i> (Vis, rare.) | | Vir-ium. |
| | <i>Dat.</i> (Vi, rare.) | | Vir-ibus. |
| | <i>Acc.</i> Vim. | | Vir-es. |
| | <i>Voc.</i> ——— | | Vir-es. |
| | <i>Abl.</i> Vi. | | Vir-ibus. |
| (5.) | <i>Nom.</i> Nix, f., <i>snow.</i> | | Niv-ēs. |
| | <i>Gen.</i> Niv-īs. | | Niv-ium. |
| | &c. | | &c. |

ABSTRACT VIEW OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

| | | | |
|-----------|--|---|---|
| | CLASS. | | CLASS. |
| | I. <i>Pure stem in the Nominative.</i> | | IV. <i>Last letter of stem dropped.</i> |
| | Consul. Honor. | SUBTRACTION. | Sermo. Lac, n. |
| | Consul-is. Honor-is. | | Sermon-is. Lact-is. |
| ADDITION. | II. <i>Letter added to stem.</i> | SUBSTITUTION. | V. <i>Letter thrown out before s.</i> |
| | Urb-s. Dux (=duc-s). | | Aetas. Laus. |
| | Urb-is. Duc-is. | Aetat-is. Laud-is. | |
| | III. <i>Vowel inserted.</i> | VI. <i>Last vowel of stem changed.</i> | |
| | Nav-i-s. Clad-e-s. | Nomen, n. Caput, n. | |
| | Nav-is. Clad-is. | Nomin-is. Capit-is. | |
| | | VII. <i>Last consonant of stem changed.</i> | |
| | | Flos. Arbos (or Arbor). | |
| | | Flor-is. Arbor-is. | |

NOUNS WITH PECULIARITIES OF MORE THAN ONE CLASS.

| CLASSES. | NOM. | STEM. | GEN. |
|-------------------|--------|-----------|------------|
| (1.) II. and VI. | Judex | (Judic-) | Judic-is. |
| (2.) IV. and VI. | Homo | (Homin-) | Homin-is. |
| (3.) V. and VI. | Miles | (Milit-) | Milit-is. |
| (4.) VI. and VII. | Corpus | (Corpor-) | Corpor-is. |

SECTION V.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

1. The nouns of the Fourth Declension end, in the nom., in *-ūs*, or *-ū*. Those in *-ūs* are masc. or fem., and those in *-ū* neut.

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Nom. Fruct-ūs, m., fruit. | Fruct-ūs, fruits. |
| Gen. Fruct-ūs, of fruit. | Fruct-ūum, of fruits. |
| Dat. Fruct-ūi, to or for fruit. | Fruct-ibus, to or for fruits. |
| Acc. Fruct-ūm, fruit. | Fruct-ūs, fruits. |
| Voc. Fruct-ūs, O fruit! | Fruct-ūs, O fruits! |
| Abl. Fruct-ū, from, &c., fruit. | Fruct-ibus, from, &c., fruits. |
| Nom. Gēn-ū, n., a knee. | Gēn-ūā, knees. |
| Gen. Gen-ūs, of a knee. | Gen-ūum, of knees. |
| Dat. Gen-ūi, to or for a knee. | Gen-ibus, to or for knees. |
| Acc. Gen-ū, a knee. | Gen-ua, knees. |
| Voc. Gen-ū, O knee! | Gen-ua, O knees! |
| Abl. Gen-ū, from, &c., a knee. | Gen-ibus, from, &c., knees. |

2. Several nouns of this declension have also forms belonging to the Second; as, *senatūs*, gen. *senatūs* or *senati*. *Domus* is declined as follows:—

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Dōm-ūs, f., a house. | Dom-ūs. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Dom-ūs,* | Dom-uum, or domōrum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Dom-ui (rarely domo). | Dom-ībus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Dom-ūm. | Dom-ōs (or domūs). |
| <i>Voc.</i> Dom-ūs. | Dom-ūs. |
| <i>Abl.</i> Dom-ō (rarely domū). | Dom-ībus. |

Obs. 1.—Words in *-cus* (and *-cu*), and also *tribus*, a tribe; *artus*, a joint; *partus*, a birth; *portus*, a harbour; *vĕru*, a spit; and one or two others, make the dat. and abl. plur. in *-ubus*, instead of *-ibus*. *Portus* and *veru* have also *-ibus*.

Obs. 2.—The following couplet contains those nouns which have always or usually *-ubus* in the dat. and abl. plur.:

Arcus, *ācus*, *portus*, *quercus*, *ficus*, add, and *artus*,
Tribus, *lācus*, *spĕcus*, too; with *vĕru*, *pĕcu*, *partus*.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Ācus</i> , f., a needle. | <i>Currus</i> , m., a carriage. | <i>Mānus</i> , f., a hand. |
| <i>Arcus</i> , m., a bow. | <i>Exercitus</i> , m., an army. | <i>Nūrus</i> , f., a daughter-in-law. |
| <i>Cantus</i> , m., a song. | <i>Fluctus</i> , m., a billow. | <i>Vultus</i> , m., the face. |
| <i>Cornu</i> , n., a horn. | <i>Grādus</i> , m., a step. | <i>Vĕru</i> , n., a spit. |

3. GENDER.—The nouns of this declension which end in *-us* are generally masc. But the following are fem:—

(a) Names of trees; as, *quercus*, an oak.

(b) The words—

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>Ācus</i> , a needle. | <i>Nūrus</i> , a daughter-in-law. |
| <i>Ānus</i> , an old woman. | <i>Pĕnus</i> , gen. <i>-us</i> , or <i>-i</i> (f. or m.,) provisions. |
| <i>Cōlus</i> , a distaff (also masc.) | <i>Porticus</i> , a porch. |
| <i>Dōmus</i> , a house. | <i>Socrus</i> , a mother-in-law. |
| <i>Īdūs</i> , (plur.), the <i>Ides</i> (13th, or, in some cases, the 15th of the month.) | <i>Spĕcus</i> , a cave (usually masc., rarely neut.) |
| <i>Mānus</i> , a hand. | <i>Tribus</i> , a tribe. |

4. Words in *-u* are neut.; as, *gĕnū*, a knee.

* *Domi* is used in the sense of "at home."

SECTION VI.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

1. The nouns of the Fifth Declension have the nom. sing. in *-es* and the gen. in *-ei*.

| SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Dī-ēs, m. or f., a day. | Di-ēs, m., days. |
| <i>Gen.</i> Di-ēi, of a day. | Di-ērum, of days. |
| <i>Dat.</i> Di-ēi, to or for a day. | Di-ēbus, to or for days. |
| <i>Acc.</i> Di-ēm, a day. | Di-ēs, days. |
| <i>Voc.</i> Di-ēs, O day! | Di-ēs, O days! |
| <i>Abl.</i> Di-ē, from, &c., a day. | Di-ēbus, from, &c., days. |
| | |
| <i>Nom.</i> R-es, f., a thing. | R-ēs, things. |
| <i>Gen.</i> R-ēi, of a thing. | R-ērum, of things. |
| <i>Dat.</i> R-ēi, to or for a thing. | R-ēbus, to or for things. |
| <i>Acc.</i> R-ēm, a thing. | R-ēs, things. |
| <i>Voc.</i> R-ēs, O thing! | R-ēs, O things! |
| <i>Abl.</i> R-ē, from, &c., a thing. | R-ēbus, from, &c., things. |

2. *Dies* and *res* are the only words of this declension which have the plur. complete. The seven substantives, *ācies*, *effigies*, *fācies*, *glācies*, *sēries*, *spēcies*, and *spēs*, have the nom., acc., and voc. plur. The other substantives of this declension want the plur. altogether.

Obs. 1.—In the gen. and dat. sing. the letter *e* is long when a vowel precedes it, short when a consonant goes before: as, *dī-ē-i*; but *r-ē-i*, *fid-ē-i*.

Obs. 2.—All the substantives of this declension end in *-iēs*, except three,—*res*, a thing; *spēs*, hope; and *fīdes*, faith. *Plēbes* (another form of *plebs*), the common people, also ends in *-ēs*.

3. GENDER.—The words of the Fifth Declension are all fem., except *dies*, a day, which in the sing. is sometimes masc. and sometimes fem., but in the plur. masc. only. The compound *mēridies* is masc.

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.*

| | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Acies</i> , an army. | <i>Fācies</i> , a face. | <i>Glācies</i> , ice. |
| <i>Caesūries</i> , a head of hair. | <i>Fīdes</i> , faith | <i>Mātēries</i> , material. |

* See No. 2 of this Section.

GENERAL VIEW OF ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

| SINGULAR. | | | | | |
|-------------|------------|------------|-------------|-------------|----------|
| | 1 Decl. | 2 Decl. | 3 Decl. | 4 Decl. | 5 Decl. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Mens-ă. | Serv-ŭs. | Hönör. | Fruct-ŭs. | Dĩ-ēs. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Mens-ae. | Serv-ī. | Honör-īs. | Fruct-ŭs. | Di-ēi. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Mens-ae. | Serv-ō. | Honor-ī. | Fruct-ŭi. | Di-ēi. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Mens-ăm. | Serv-ŭm. | Honor-ēm. | Fruct-ŭm. | Di-ēm. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Mens-ă. | Serv-ě. | Honor. | Fruct-ŭs. | Di-ēs. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Mens-ă. | Serv-ō. | Honor-ě. | Fruct-ŭ. | Di-ē. |
| PLURAL. | | | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Mens-ae. | Serv-ī. | Hönör-ēs. | Fruct-ŭs. | Di-ēs. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Mens-ărum. | Serv-ōrum. | Honor-um. | Fruct-uum. | Di-ērum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Mens-īs. | Serv-īs. | Honor-ībŭs. | Fruct-ībŭs. | Di-ēbus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Mens-ās. | Serv-ōs. | Honor-ēs. | Fruct-ŭs. | Di-ēs. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Mens-ae. | Serv-ī. | Honor-ēs. | Fruct-ŭs. | Di-ēs. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Mens-īs. | Serv-īs. | Honor-ībŭs. | Fruct-ībŭs. | Di-ēbus. |

CHAPTER V.—ADJECTIVES.

SECTION I.

INFLEXION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. An adjective is a word used with a noun to denote some quality or attribute, or to indicate some fact: as, *bönus pŭer*, a good boy; *trēs ěqui*, three horses.

2. Adjectives may be divided into three classes:—

- (1.) Those which have three forms—one for each gender: as, *bönus*, masc., good; *böna*, fem., good; *bönum*, neut., good; *tĕnĕr*, masc., tender; *tĕnĕra*, fem., tender; *tĕnĕrum*, neut., tender; *cĕler*, masc., swift; *cĕlĕris*, fem., swift; *cĕlĕrĕ*, neut., swift.
- (2.) Those which have two forms—one for the masc. and fem. in common, and one for the neut.: as, *grăvis*, masc., heavy; *grăvis*, fem., heavy; *grăve*, neut., heavy; *grăvior*, masc., heavier; *grăvior*, fem., heavier; *grăvius*, neut., heavier.

- (3.) Those which have only one form in the nom. for all genders: as, *fēlix*, masc., happy; *fēlix*, fem., happy; *fēlix*, neut., happy; *pār*, masc., equal; *pār*, fem., equal; *pār*, neut., equal; *sāpiens*, masc., wise; *sāpiens*, fem., wise; *sāpiens*, neut., wise.

CLASS I.

3. In adjectives of three forms, in *-us*, *-a*, *-um* (as *bonus*), the masc. is declined like *servus*, the fem. like *mensa*, and the neut. like *mālum*. Hence these are called adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. In those of the Third Declension (as *cēler*), the masc. is declined like *anser* (p. 20), the fem. like *hostis* (p. 24), and the neut. like *rēte* (p. 22). When the nom. neut. ends in *-e*, the abl. sing. ends in *-i*.

Obs.—*Cēler*, *ācer*, and such adjectives, have the masc. occasionally in *-is*: as, *ācer* or *ācris*, masc.; *ācris*, fem.; *ācre*, neut.: so *cēler* or *cēlēris*.

BONUS, m., BONA, f., BONUM, n., good.

SINGULAR.

| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
|------------------|---------|---------|---------|
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> | Bōn-ūs. | Bōn-ā. | Bōn-ūm. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Bon-ī. | Bon-ae. | Bon-ī. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Bon-ō. | Bon-ae. | Bon-ō. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Bon-ūm. | Bon-ām. | Bon-ūm. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Bon-ě. | Bon-ā. | Bon-ūm. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Bon-ō. | Bon-ā. | Bon-ō. |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Bōn-ī. | Bōn-ae. | Bōn-ā. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Bon-ōrum. | Bon-ārum. | Bōn-ōrum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Bon-īs. | Bon-īs. | Bon-īs. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Bon-ōs. | Bon-ās. | Bon-ā. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Bon-ī. | Bon-ae. | Bon-ā. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Bon-īs. | Bon-īs. | Bon-īs. |

TENER, TENERA, TENERUM, tender.

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| (2.) <i>Nom.</i> | Těněř. | Těněř-ā. | Těněř-ūm. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Teněř-ī. | Tener-ae. | Tener-ī. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Tener-ō. | Tener-ae. | Tener-ō. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Tener-ūm. | Tener-ām. | Tener-ūm. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Tener. | Tener-ā. | Teněř-ūm. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Tener-ō. | Tener-ā. | Tener-ō. |

| | Masc. | PLURAL. Fem. | Neut. |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Tĕnĕr-ĭ. | Tĕnĕr-ae. | Tĕnĕr-ă. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Tener-ōrum. | Tener-ārum. | Tener-ōrum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Tener-īs. | Tener-īs. | Tener-īs. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Tener-ōs. | Tener-ās. | Tener-ă. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Tener-ĭ. | Tener-ae. | Tener-ă. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Tener-īs. | Tener-īs. | Tener-īs. |

PIGER, FIGRA, FIGRUM, *lazy.*

| | | SINGULAR. | |
|------------------|----------|-----------|----------|
| (3.) <i>Nom.</i> | Pĭgĕr. | Pĭgr-ă. | Pĭgr-ŭm. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Pĭgr-i. | Pĭgr-ae. | Pĭgr-i. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Pĭgr-o. | Pĭgr-ae. | Pĭgr-o. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Pĭgr-um. | Pĭgr-am. | Pĭgr-um. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Pĭger. | Pĭgr-a. | Pĭgr-um. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Pĭgr-o. | Pĭgr-a. | Pĭgr-o. |

| | | PLURAL. | |
|-------------|------------|------------|------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Pĭgr-ĭ. | Pĭgr-ae. | Pĭgr-ă. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Pĭgr-orum. | Pĭgr-arum. | Pĭgr-orum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Pĭgr-is. | Pĭgr-is. | Pĭgr-is. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Pĭgr-os. | Pĭgr-as. | Pĭgr-a. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Pĭgr-i. | Pĭgr-ae. | Pĭgr-a. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Pĭgr-is. | Pĭgr-is. | Pĭgr-is. |

CELER, CELERIS, CELERE, *fleet.*

| | | SINGULAR. | |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------|-----------|
| (4.) <i>Nom.</i> | Cĕler (or celeris). | Celĕr-is. | Celĕr-ĕ. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Celer-is. | Celer-is. | Celer-is. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Celer-i. | Celer-i. | Celer-i. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Celer-em. | Celer-em. | Celer-e. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Celer (or celeris). | Celer-is. | Celer-e. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Celer-i. | Celer-i. | Celer-i. |

| | | PLURAL. | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Celer-es. | Celer-es. | Celer-a. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Celer-um. | Celer-um. | Celer-um. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Celer-ibus. | Celer-ibus. | Celer-ibus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Celer-es. | Celer-es. | Celer-a. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Celer-es. | Celer-es. | Celer-a. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Celer-ibus. | Celer-ibus. | Celer-ibus. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(1.) <i>Amand-us</i>, -a, -um, (deserving) to be loved. <i>Amātūr-us</i>, -a, -um, about to love. <i>Amāt-us</i>, -a, -um, loved. <i>Gravissim-us</i>, -a, -um, heaviest. <i>Lāt-us</i>, -a, -um, broad. <i>Me-us</i>, -u, um, my.* <i>Mult-us</i>, -a, -um, much (many) <i>Parv-us</i>, -a, -um, small.</p> <p>(2.) <i>Asper</i>, <i>asper-a</i>, <i>asper-um</i>, rough.</p> | <p><i>Līber</i>, <i>liber-a</i>, <i>liber-um</i>, free. (3.) <i>Nīger</i>, <i>nigra</i>, <i>nigrum</i>, black. <i>Noster</i>, <i>nostra</i>, <i>nostrum</i>, our. <i>Pulcher</i>, <i>pulchra</i>, <i>pulchrum</i>, beautiful. (4.) <i>Acer</i>, or <i>acris</i>, <i>acris</i>, <i>acre</i>, sharp. <i>Cēlē-ber</i>, or -<i>bris</i>, <i>cēlebris</i>, <i>celebre</i>, famous. <i>Pūter</i>, or <i>putris</i>, <i>putris</i>, <i>putre</i>, rotten. <i>Vōlūcer</i>, or <i>volucris</i>, <i>volucris</i>, <i>volucres</i>, swift.</p> |
|--|--|

4. The following adjectives of this declension have the gen. sing. in *-ius*, and the dat. in *-i*, for all genders; in the other cases of the sing. and plur. they are like *bōnus*; viz. :—

| | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Ullus</i> , any. | <i>Tōtus</i> , all, whole. | <i>Alter</i> , one (of two.) |
| <i>Nullus</i> , none. | <i>Ūnus</i> , one. | <i>Ūter</i> , which (of two.) |
| <i>Sōlus</i> , alone. | <i>Alius</i> , one (of many.) | <i>Neuter</i> , neither (of two.) |

NULLUS, NULLA, NULLUM, none.

SINGULAR.

| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Null-ūs. | Null-ā. | Null-ūm. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Null-īus. | Null-īus. | Null-īus. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Null-ī. | Null-ī. | Null-ī. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Null-ūm. | Null-ām. | Null-ūm. |
| <i>Ab.</i> | Null-ō. | Null-ā | Null-ō. |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|-------------|------------|------------|------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Null-ī. | Null-ae. | Null-ā. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Null-ōrum. | Null-ārum. | Null-ōrum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Null-īs. | Null-īs. | Null-īs. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Null-ōs. | Null-ās. | Null-ā. |
| <i>Ab.</i> | Null-īs. | Null-īs. | Null-īs. |

5. *Alius* is similarly declined, except that the nom., acc., and voc. sing. neut. end in *-ud* instead of *-um*.

ALIUS, ALIA, ALIUD, another,

SINGULAR.

| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
|-------------|--------|--------|--------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Ālīūs. | Ālīā. | Ālīūd. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Ālīus. | Ālīus. | Ālīus. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Ālīi. | Ālīi. | Ālīi. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Ālīum. | Ālīam. | Ālīud. |
| <i>Ab.</i> | Ālīo | Ālīa. | Ālīo. |

* *Meus* has the voc. masc. *mi*. *Volucres* has the gen. plur. in *-um*.

| | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|----------|----------|----------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Alii. | Aliae. | Alia. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Aliorum. | Aliarum. | Aliorum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Aliis. | Aliis. | Aliis. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Alios. | Alias. | Alia. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Aliis. | Aliis. | Aliis. |

CLASS II.

6. Adjectives of two forms belong to the Third Declension. Thus *grāvis*, both masc. and fem., is declined like *hostis* (p. 24), and *grāve*, neut., like *rētē* (p. 22). *Grāvior*, masc. and fem., is declined like *hōnor* (p. 20), and *grāvius*, neut., like *corpus* (p. 29).

GRAVIS, GRAVIS, GRAVE, *heavy*.

| | SINGULAR. | | |
|------------------|------------|------------|------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> | Grāv-īs. | Grāv-īs. | Grāv-ē. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Grāv-īs. | Grāv-īs. | Grāv-īs. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Grav-ī. | Grav-ī. | Grav-ī. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Grav-ēm. | Grav-ēm. | Grav-ē. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Grav-īs. | Grav-īs. | Grav-ē. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Grav-ī. | Grav-ī. | Grav-ī. |
| | PLURAL. | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Grāv-ēs. | Grāv-ēs. | Grāv-iā. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Grav-īum. | Grav-īum. | Grav-īum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Grav-ībus. | Grav-ībus. | Grav-ībus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Grav-ēs. | Grav-ēs. | Grav-iā. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Grav-ēs. | Grav-ēs. | Grav-iā. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Grav-ībus. | Grav-ībus. | Grav-ībus. |

GRAVIOR, GRAVIOR, GRAVIUS, *heavier*.

| | SINGULAR. | | |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| (2.) <i>Nom.</i> | Grāvior. | Grāvior. | Grāvius. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Graviōr-is. | Graviōr-is. | Graviōr-is. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Gravior-i. | Gravior-i. | Gravior-i. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Gravior-em. | Gravior-em. | Grāvius. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Gravior. | Gravior. | Grāvius. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Gravior-e or -i. | Gravior-e or -i. | Gravior-e or -i. |
| | PLURAL. | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Graviōr-es. | Graviōr-es. | Graviōr-a. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Gravior-um. | Gravior-um. | Gravior-um. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Gravior-ibus. | Gravior-ibus. | Gravior-ibus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Gravior-es. | Gravior-es. | Gravior-a. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Gravior-es. | Gravior-es. | Gravior-a. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Gravior-ibus. | Gravior-ibus. | Gravior-ibus. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| (1.) <i>Brev-is, -is, -e, short.</i> <i>Dulc-is, -is, -e, sweet.</i> <i>Fort-is, -is, -e, brave.</i> <i>Omn-is, -is, -e, every, all.</i> | | (2.) <i>Brevi-or, -or, -us, shorter.</i> <i>Docti-or, -or, -us, more learned.</i> <i>Dulci-or, -or, -us, sweeter.</i> <i>Maj-or, -or, -us, greater.</i> |
|---|--|--|

CLASS III.

7. Adjectives of one form belong to the Third Declension. Thus, *felix* is declined like *lex* (p. 23), *par* like *honor* (p. 20), and *sapiens* like *frons* (p. 25). In the neut. of all these, the rule for the declension of neut. nouns (p. 19, 5) of course applies.

PAR, PAR, PAR, *equal to.*

| | SINGULAR. | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Pār.</i> | <i>Pār.</i> | <i>Pār.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Pār-is.</i> | <i>Pār-is.</i> | <i>Pār-is.</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Par-i.</i> | <i>Par-i.</i> | <i>Par-i.</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Par-em.</i> | <i>Par-em.</i> | <i>Par.</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Pār.</i> | <i>Pār.</i> | <i>Pār.</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Pār-i (rarely -e).</i> | <i>Pār-i (or -e),</i> | <i>Pār-i (or -e).</i> |
| | PLURAL. | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Pār-ēs.</i> | <i>Pār-ēs.</i> | <i>Pār-ĩa.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Par-ium.</i> | <i>Par-ium.</i> | <i>Par-ium.</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Par-ibus.</i> | <i>Par-ibus.</i> | <i>Par-ibus.</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Par-es.</i> | <i>Par-es.</i> | <i>Par-ia.</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Par-es.</i> | <i>Par-es.</i> | <i>Par-ia.</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Par-ibus.</i> | <i>Par-ibus.</i> | <i>Par-ibus.</i> |

FELIX, FELIX, FELIX, *happy.*

| | SINGULAR. | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| (2.) <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Fēlix.</i> | <i>Fēlix.</i> | <i>Fēlix.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Fēlic-īs.</i> | <i>Fēlic-īs.</i> | <i>Fēlic-īs.</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Felic-ī.</i> | <i>Felic-ī.</i> | <i>Felic-ī.</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Felic-ēm.</i> | <i>Felic-ēm.</i> | <i>Felix.</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Felix.</i> | <i>Felix.</i> | <i>Felix.</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Felic-ě or -ī.</i> | <i>Felic-ě or -ī.</i> | <i>Felic-ě or -ī.</i> |
| | PLURAL. | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>Fēlic-ēs.</i> | <i>Fēlic-ēs.</i> | <i>Fēlic-ĩa.</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Felic-ium.</i> | <i>Felic-ium.</i> | <i>Felic-ium.</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Felic-ibus.</i> | <i>Felic-ibus.</i> | <i>Felic-ibus.</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>Felic-es.</i> | <i>Felic-es.</i> | <i>felic-ia.</i> |
| <i>Voc.</i> | <i>Felic-es.</i> | <i>Felic-es.</i> | <i>Felic-ia.</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>Felic-ibus.</i> | <i>Felic-ibus.</i> | <i>Felic-ibus.</i> |

LEGENS, LEGENS, LEGENS, *choosing.*

| | SINGULAR. | | |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| (3.) <i>Nom.</i> | Lēgens. | Lēgens. | Lēgens. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Legent-is. | Legent-is. | Legent-is. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Legent-i. | Legent-i. | Legent-i. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Legent-em. | Legent-em. | Legens. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Legens. | Legens. | Legens. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Legent-e or -i.* | Legent-e or -i. | Legent-e or -i. |
| | PLURAL. | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Lēgent-es. | Lēgent-es. | Lēgent-ia. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Legent-ium. | Legent-ium. | Legent-ium. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Legent-ibus. | Legent-ibus. | Legent-ibus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Legent-es. | Legent-es. | Legent-ia. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Legent-es. | Legent-es. | Legent-ia. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Legent-ibus. | Legent-ibus. | Legent-ibus. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

- | | |
|---|--|
| (1.) <i>Mēmor</i> , gen. <i>mēmōr-is</i> , mindful; abl. sing. in <i>-i</i> only; gen. plur. <i>-um</i> . | <i>Audiens</i> , gen. <i>audient-is</i> , hearing. |
| <i>Pauper</i> , gen. <i>paupēr-is</i> , poor; abl. sing. in <i>-e</i> ; gen. plur. in <i>-um</i> . | <i>Compōs</i> , gen. <i>compōt-is</i> , master of; abl. sing. in <i>-e</i> ; gen. plur. in <i>-um</i> . |
| <i>Vigil</i> , † gen. <i>vīgīl-is</i> , watchful. | <i>Concors</i> , gen. <i>concord-is</i> , harmonious; <i>-um</i> in gen. plur. |
| (2.) <i>Atrox</i> , gen. <i>atrōc-is</i> , savage. | <i>Iners</i> , † gen. <i>inert-is</i> , inactive. |
| <i>Audax</i> , gen. <i>audāc-is</i> , daring. | <i>Momens</i> , warning. |
| <i>Ferox</i> , gen. <i>fērōc-is</i> , fierce. | <i>Portans</i> , gen. <i>portant-is</i> , carrying. |
| <i>Inops</i> , gen. <i>inōp-is</i> , needy; gen. plur. <i>-um</i> ; abl. sing. <i>-i</i> only. | <i>Quadrūpes</i> , gen. <i>quadrūpēd-is</i> , four-footed; <i>-e</i> in abl. sing., and <i>-um</i> in gen. plur. |
| <i>Lōcūples</i> , gen. <i>lōcūplēt-is</i> , rich; gen. plur. <i>-um</i> , or <i>-ium</i> . | <i>Rēcens</i> , gen. <i>recent-is</i> , fresh. |
| (<i>Pūbes</i>), gen. <i>pubēr-is</i> , young; abl. sing. in <i>-e</i> ; gen. plur. in <i>-um</i> . | <i>Sāpiens</i> , gen. <i>sapient-is</i> , wise. |
| (3.) <i>Amans</i> , <i>amant-is</i> , loving. | <i>Tūmens</i> , gen. <i>tument-is</i> , swelling. |

COMPOUND VARIETIES.

8. Some adjectives are declined like the substantives on pp. 28, 29; thus, *simplex* is like *judex*, *dīvēs* like *mīlēs*, and *vētūs* like *vulnus*. The usual differences between masc. and neut. must be observed.

* Adjectives and participles of one termination in the nom. have the abl. in *-e* or *-i*; so also comparatives. When the abl. ends in *-i*, or *-e* and *-i* both, the gen. plur. ends in *-ium*, and the nom. plur. neut. in *-ia*, except comparatives which have *-um* and *-a*.

† *Vigil* has the abl. sing. in *-i* (*-e* rarely), and gen. plur. in *-um*.

‡ *Iners* has the abl. sing. almost always in *-i*.

SIMPLEX, SIMPLEX, SIMPLEX, *simple*.

SINGULAR.

| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| (1.) <i>Nom.</i> | Simplex. | Simplex. | Simplex. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Simplīc-is. | Simplīc-is. | Simplīc-is. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Simplīc-i. | Simplīc-i. | Simplīc-i. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Simplīc-em. | Simplīc-em. | Simplex. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Simplex. | Simplex. | Simplex. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Simplīc-e or -i. | Simplīc-e or -i. | Simplīc-e or -i. |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Simplīc-es. | Simplīc-es. | Simplīc-ia. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Simplīc-ium. | Simplīc-ium. | Simplīc-ium. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Simplīc-ibus. | Simplīc-ibus. | Simplīc-ibus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Simplīc-es. | Simplīc-es. | Simplīc-ia. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Simplīc-es. | Simplīc-es. | Simplīc-ia. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Simplīc-ibus. | Simplīc-ibus. | Simplīc-ibus. |

DIVES, DIVES, DIVES, *rich*.

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| (2.) <i>Nom.</i> | Dīvēs. | Dīvēs. | Dīvēs. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Dīvīt-is. | Dīvīt-is. | Dīvīt-is. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Dīvīt-i. | Dīvīt-i. | Dīvīt-i. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Dīvīt-em. | Dīvīt-em. | Dives. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Dives. | Dives. | Dives. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Dīvīt-e, (or -i.) | Dīvīt-e, (or -i.) | Dīvīt-e, (or -i.) |

PLURAL.

| | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Dīvīt-ēs. | Dīvīt-ēs. | (Dīvīt-īā).* |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Dīvīt-um. | Dīvīt-um. | Dīvīt-um. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Dīvīt-ibus. | Dīvīt-ibus. | Dīvīt-ibus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Dīvīt-es. | Dīvīt-es. | (Dīvīt-ia.) |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Dīvīt-es. | Dīvīt-es. | (Dīvīt-ia.) |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Dīvīt-ibus | Dīvīt-ibus. | Dīvīt-ibus. |

Obs.—*Dives* has a contracted form, *dīs*; neut. *dīte*; gen. *dītis*; plur. neut. *dītia*, &c.

VETUS, VETUS, VETUS, *old*.

SINGULAR.

| | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| (3.) <i>Nom.</i> | Vētus. | Vētus. | Vētus. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Vētēr-is. | Vētēr-is. | Vētēr-is. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Veter-i. | Veter-i. | Veter-i. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Veter-em. | Veter-em. | Vetus. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Vetus. | Vetus. | Vetus. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Veter-e, (or -i.) | Veter-e, (or -i.) | Veter-e, (or -i.) |

* The nom., acc., and voc. plur. neut. do not occur; but the shorter form *dītia*, from *dīs*, is used instead.

| | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Vētēr-ēs. | Vētēr-ēs. | Vētēr-ā. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Veter-um. | Veter-um. | Veter-um. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Veter-ibus. | Veter-ibus. | Veter-ibus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Veter-es. | Veter-es. | Veter-a. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | Veter-es. | Veter-es. | Veter-a. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Veter-ibus. | Veter-ibus. | Veter-ibus. |

LIST OF WORDS TO BE DECLINED.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(1.) <i>Duplex</i>, gen. <i>duplic-is</i>, double. <i>Princeps</i>, gen. <i>princip-is</i>, chief; abl. sing. in <i>-e</i>, gen. plur. in <i>-um</i>. <i>Supplex</i>, gen. <i>supplic-is</i>, suppliant; gen. plur. in <i>-um</i>. <i>Vindex</i>, gen. <i>vindic-is</i>, avenging.</p> | <p>(2.) <i>Ancps</i>, gen. <i>ancipit-is</i>, double, doubtful (<i>-um</i> in gen. plur.) <i>Dēsēs</i>, gen. <i>dēsūd-is</i>, lazy (abl. sing. in <i>-e</i>, gen. plur. wanting). <i>Particeps</i>, gen. <i>particip-is</i>, sharing. <i>Præceps</i>,* gen. <i>præcipit-is</i>, headlong.</p> |
|--|--|

9. Some adjectives in *-us*, *-a*, *-um* (or *-ud*), make their gen. in *-ius*, and their dat. in *-i*, though the regular forms are occasionally found in classical writers, as, *e.g.*, in Cicero and Caesar. For a list of these and their inflexions see p. 37.

SECTION II.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Most adjectives are used to indicate qualities or attributes; hence, as qualities and attributes exist in different individuals in varying degree, adjectives have three varieties of form, called Degrees of Comparison, for the purpose of expressing this difference.

2. The Degrees of Comparison are—the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

3. The Positive degree is the simple adjective: as, *bonus*, good; *malus*, bad; *niger*, black; *fortis*, brave.

4. The Comparative degree is used to indicate that one individual (person or thing), or set of individuals, possesses a certain quality or attribute in a greater measure than the other individual or set of individuals spoken of: as, *Tullus Hostilius ferocior erat Romulo*, Tullus Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus; *aurum est vilius virtutibus*, gold is more worthless than virtues; *lupi ferociiores sunt quam canes*, wolves are more ferocious than dogs.

* *Præceps* and *particeps* have *-um* in the gen. plur.

5. The Superlative degree is used to indicate that one individual (person or thing), or set of individuals, possesses a certain quality or attribute in a greater measure than *any* other individual or set of individuals of the class spoken of; as, *magister est doctissimus omnium*, the master is the most learned of all.

Obs. 1.—It must be noted that the Latins often use the comparative degree as equal to “rather” or “too” in English: as, *callidior*, rather cunning, too cunning; *i.e.*, more cunning than one ought to be.

Obs. 2.—In like manner the superlative is used as equal to “very;” as, *callidissimus*, very cunning.

6. The comparative degree is formed by adding *-ior*, m., *-ior*, f., *-ius*, n., to the stem of the positive; as,—

| | POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | | |
|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
| | | STEM. | Masc. | Fem. |
| Clārus. | Clar- | Clār-ior. | Clār-ior. | Clār-ius, <i>clearer</i> . |
| Doctus. | Doct- | Doct-ior. | Doct-ior. | Doct-ius, <i>more learned</i> . |
| Sævus. | Sæv- | Sæv-ior. | Sæv-ior. | Sæv-ius, <i>more cruel</i> . |
| Grāvis. | Grav- | Grāv-ior. | Grāv-ior. | Grāv-ius, <i>heavier</i> . |
| Tēner. | Tener- | Tener-ior. | Tener-ior. | Tener-ius, <i>more tender</i> . |
| Fēlix. | Felic- | Fēlic-ior. | Fēlic-ior. | Fēlic-ius, <i>happier</i> . |
| Sapiens. | Sapient- | Sapient-ior. | Sapient-ior. | Sapient-ius, <i>wiser</i> . |
| Dives. | Divit- | Divit-ior. | Divit-ior. | Divit-ius, <i>richer</i> . |
| Niger. | Nigr- | Nigr-ior. | Nigr-ior. | Nigr-ius, <i>blacker</i> . |

7. The superlative degree is formed by adding *-issimus*, m., *-issima*, f., *-issimum*, n., to the stem of the positive; as,—

| | POSITIVE. | COMPAR. | SUPERLATIVE. | | |
|----------|--------------|------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|-------|
| | | | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| Clar-us. | Clar-ior. | Clar-issimus. | -issima. | -issimum, <i>clearest</i> . | |
| Doct-us. | Doct-ior. | Doct-issimus. | -issima. | -issimum, <i>most learned</i> . | |
| Sæv-us. | Sæv-ior. | Sæv-issimus. | -issima. | -issimum, <i>most cruel</i> . | |
| Grav-is. | Grav-ior. | Grav-issimus. | -issima. | -issimum, <i>heaviest</i> . | |
| Felix. | Felic-ior. | Felic-issimus. | -issima. | -issimum, <i>happiest</i> . | |
| Div-es. | Divit-ior. | Divit-issimus. | -issima. | -issimum, <i>richest</i> . | |
| Sapiens. | Sapient-ior. | Sapient-issimus. | -issima. | -issimum, <i>wisest</i> . | |

Obs.—In writers who affect an antique style, as *Sallust*, the superlative termination is often written *-issimus*.

8. Exceptions:—

- (1.) When the positive ends in
- r*
- , the superlative takes
- rĭmus*
- ; as,—

| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| Tĕner, <i>tender</i> . | Tĕnĕr-ior. | Tener-rĭmus. |
| Nĭger, <i>black</i> . | Nigr-ior. | Niger-rĭmus. |
| Āoer, <i>sharp</i> . | Acr-ior. | Acer-rĭmus. |

Obs.—*Vĕtus*, old (stem *veter-*), has a superlative, *veter-rĭmus*.
Maturus, ripe, has both *maturissĭmus* and *maturrĭmus*.

- (2.) Six adjectives ending in
- lis*
- take
- lĭmus*
- in the superlative; viz,—

| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Fācĭl-is, <i>easy</i> . | Fācĭl-ior. | Fācĭl-lĭmus. |
| Grācĭl-is, <i>slender</i> . | Grācĭl-ior. | Grācĭl-lĭmus. |
| Hŭmĭl-is, <i>low</i> . | Hŭmĭl-ior. | Hŭmĭl-lĭmus. |
| Sĭmĭl-is, <i>like</i> . | Sĭmĭl-ior. | Sĭmĭl-lĭmus. |
| Diffĭcĭl-is, <i>difficult</i> . | Diffĭcĭl-ior. | Diffĭcĭl-lĭmus. |
| Dissĭmĭl-is, <i>unlike</i> . | Dissĭmĭl-ior. | Dissĭmĭl-lĭmus. |

So also—

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------|--|
| Imbecill-us (<i>or -is</i>). | Imbecill-ior. | { Imbecillĭmus <i>or</i> Imbecillissĭmus. |
|--------------------------------|---------------|--|

Obs.—Other adjectives in *-lis* are regular; as, *ŭtil-is*, *ŭtil-ior*, *ŭtil-issĭmus*.

- (3.) Compound adjectives ending in
- dicus*
- ,
- fĭcus*
- , and
- vŏlus*
- , take
- entior*
- and
- entissĭmus*
- , as if from positives in
- ens*
- ,
- mālĕdicĕns*
- , (
- mŭlĕfĭcĕns*
-),
- mālĕvŏlĕns*
- ; as,—

| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|-----------------------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| Mālĕdic-us, <i>abusive</i> . | Maledicent-ior. | Maledicent-issĭmus. |
| Magnĭfĭc-us, <i>splendid</i> . | Magnificent-ior. | Magnificent-issĭmus. |
| Mālĕfĭc-us, <i>vicious</i> . | Maleficent-ior. | Maleficent-issĭmus. |
| Mālĕvŏl-us, <i>ill-disposed</i> . | Malevolent-ior. | Malevolent-issĭmus. |

So also—

| | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Ĕgĕn-us, <i>needy</i> . | Ĕgent-ior. | Ĕgent-issĭmus. |
| Prŏvĭd-us, <i>foreseeing</i> . | Prŏvident-ior. | Prŏvident-issĭmus. |
| Magnĭlŏqu-us. | Magniloquent-ior. | _____ |

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

9. Some adjectives form the degrees of comparison from stems entirely different from those of the positives; as,

| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Bōnus , <i>good</i> . | Mēlior , <i>better</i> . | Optīmus , <i>best</i> . |
| Mālus , <i>bad</i> . | Pējor , <i>worse</i> . | Pessīmus , <i>worst</i> . |
| Magnus , <i>great</i> . | Mājor , <i>greater</i> . | Maxīmus , <i>greatest</i> . |
| Parvus , <i>little</i> . | Mīnor , <i>less</i> . | Minīmus , <i>least</i> . |
| Multus , <i>much</i> . | Plūs , <i>more</i> . | Plūrīmus , <i>most</i> . |
| Frūgi (indecl.), <i>discreet</i> . | Frugālior . | Frugalissimus . |
| Sēnex , <i>old</i> . | Sēnior . | Natu maximus . |
| Jūvēnis , <i>young</i> . | Jūnior . | Natu minimus . |

Obs. 1.—*Nōquam*, worthless, is regular, — *nēquior*, *nequissimus*.

Obs. 2.—*Plus* is used most commonly as a substantive in the nom., acc., and gen. sing., and only in the neut. gender; but in the plur. it is a regular adjective, *plures, plures, plura* (or *pluria*), gen. *plur-ium*, &c.

10. A few adjectives have two forms in the superlative; as,—

| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|---|---|--|
| Extēr-us , -a, -um, <i>being outside</i> . | } Extērior , <i>outer</i> . | { Extērēmus , (sometimes extīmus), <i>the last</i> . |
| (Infēr-us) , -a, -um, <i>being under</i> . | | |
| (Postēr-us) , -a, -um, <i>being behind</i> . | } Postērīus , <i>the last</i> ; and Postūmus , <i>one born after his father's death</i> . | |
| (Supēr-us) , -a, -um, <i>being above</i> . | | } Supērīus , <i>the last (in time)</i> ; summus , <i>the highest</i> . |

11. A few adjectives have no proper positive, but the positive stem appears in adverbs or other indeclinable words; as,—

| POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
|--|---|---------------------|
| (Ante , <i>before</i> .) | Antērior . | — |
| (Citra , <i>on this side</i> .) | Citērior . | Cītīmus . |
| (Dē , <i>down</i> .) | Dētērior . | Dētērrīmus . |
| (Intra , <i>within</i> .) | Intērior . | Intīmus . |
| (Ἄκρς , <i>swift</i> .) | Ocior . | Ocissīmus . |
| (Pris , or <i>prae</i> , <i>before</i> .) | Prīor . | Prīmus . |
| (Prōpe , <i>near</i> .) | Prōpior . | Prōxīmus . |
| (Sēcus , <i>otherwise</i> .) | Sequior , (n. <i>sequius</i>) | — |
| (Ultra , <i>beyond</i> .) | Ultērior . [<i>orsēcīus</i> . Ultīmus .] | |

CHAPTER VI.—THE NUMERALS.

1. AN important class of adjectives consists of those indicating number or amount. They are called Numerals.

2. The four principal classes of numerals are—

- (1.) The **CARDINAL**, or chief Numerals, which express the number of things absolutely: as, *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two, &c.
- (2.) The **ORDINAL** Numerals, which express the order in which some object stands in a series: as, *prīmus*, first (in order); *secundus*, second (in order), &c.
- (3.) The **DISTRIBUTIVE** Numerals, indicating how many each time, or to each individual: as, *bīni*, two at a time, or two each; *dēni*, ten at a time, or ten each, or by tens.
- (4.) **MULTIPLICATIVE**, or Adverbial Numerals, which indicate how often a thing is repeated: as, *ter mille*, thrice a thousand, *i.e.*, three thousand; *sexies*, six times.

3. Of the Cardinals, the first three are declinable; but all those from four up to one hundred are indeclinable. The hundreds, from two hundred up to one thousand, are regularly declined like the plur. of *bonus*: as, *ducent-i*, -ae, -a; *ducent-orum*, -arum, -orum, &c. The Ordinals are regular adjectives, like *bonus*: as, *terti-us*, -a, -um; *terti-i*, -ae, -i, &c.

4. *Unus*, one, is thus declined (see p. 37, 4):—

| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
|-------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Un-us , <i>one</i> . | Un-a . | Un-um . |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Un-ius . | Un-ius . | Un-ius . |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Un-i . | Un-i . | Un-i . |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Un-um . | Un-am . | Un-um . |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Un-o . | Un-a . | Un-o . |

Obs.—The plur. of *unus* is quite regular. It is used only with such substantives as have no sing. form, while they have a sing. meaning: as, *unae literae*, one letter (*i.e.*, epistle); *una castra*, one camp.

5. *Duo*, two, and *tres*, three, have of course no singular form. *Ambo*, both, is declined like *duo*. Observe that these two words take, in the dat. and abl. plur. f., the *-abus* form, which is found in certain nouns of the First Declension.

| | | | |
|-------------|----------|----------|----------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Nent. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Dŭ-o. | Du-ae. | Du-o. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Du-ōrum. | Du-ārum. | Du-ōrum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Du-ōbus. | Du-ābus. | Du-ōbus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Du-ōs. | Du-ās. | Du-o. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Du-ōbus. | Du-ābus. | Du-ōbus. |
| | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Trēs. | Trēs. | Triā. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Triūm. | Trium. | Trium. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Tribus. | Tribus. | Tribus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Tres. | Tres. | Triā. |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Tribus. | Tribus. | Tribus. |

6. The four principal classes of Numerals are arranged in parallel columns, for more easy comparison :—

| CARDINALS. | ORDINALS. | DISTRIBUTIVES. | MULTIPLICATIVES (ADV.) |
|------------------------------------|--|--|---|
| 1. Un-us, un-a, un-um, <i>one.</i> | Prim-us, <i>first.</i> | { Singŭl-i, ae, a, } one each time. | Sēm-el, <i>once.</i> |
| 2. Duo, duae, duo, <i>two.</i> | Sēcund-us, a, um, <i>or</i> alter, a, um, <i>second.</i> | { Bīnī, ae, a, } each time. | Bīs, <i>twice.</i> |
| 3. Trēs, tres, triā, <i>three.</i> | Tertius, a, um, <i>third.</i> | { Terni, <i>or</i> triīni, } three each time. | Tēr, <i>three times.</i> |
| 4. Quātuor, <i>four.</i> | Quart-us, a, um, <i>fourth.</i> | { Quāterni, } each time. | Quāter, <i>four times.</i> |
| 5. Quinque. | Quintus. | Quīnī. | Quīnquies. |
| 6. Sex. | Sextus. | Sēnī. | Sexies. |
| 7. Septem. | Septīmus. | Septēnī. | Septies. |
| 8. Octo. | Octāvus. | Octōnī. | Octies. |
| 9. Nōvem. | Nōnus. | Nōvēnī. | Nōvies. |
| 10. Dēcem. | Dēcīmus. | Dēnī. | Dēcies. |
| 11. Undēcīm. | Undēcīmus. | Undēnī. | Undēcies. |
| 12. Duodēcīm. | Duodēcīmus. | Duodēnī. | Duodēcies. |
| 13. Trēdēcīm. | Tertius decimus. | Terni dēnī. | Terdecies. |
| 14. Quatuordecīm. | Quartus decimus. | Quaterni dēnī. | Quaterdecies. |
| 15. Quīndēcīm. | Quintus decimus. | Quīni dēnī. | Quīnquiesdecies |
| 16. Sēdecīm. | Sextus decimus. | Seni dēnī. | { Sexiesdecies, <i>or</i> sedecies. |
| 17. Septendēcīm. | Septimus decimus. | Septeni dēnī. | Septiesdecies. |
| 18. Duodēvīginti. | Duodēvīcēsīmus. | { Octoni dēnī, <i>or</i> duodevīceni. | Octiesdecies, <i>or</i> duodevīcies. |
| 19. Undevīginti. | Undevīcēsīmus. | { Nōvēni dēnī, <i>or</i> undevīceni. | Noviesdecies, <i>or</i> undevīcies. |
| 20. Vīginti. | Vīcēsīmus. | Vīcēnī. | Vīcies. |
| 21. Vīginti unus. | { Unus et vicesīmus, <i>or</i> primus et vicesī- mus, <i>or</i> vicesīmus primus. | Vīceni singuli. | Semel et vīcies. |
| 22. Vīginti duo. | { Alter et vicesīmus, <i>or</i> vicesīmus secundus. | Vīceni bīni. | Bīs et vīcies. |

| CARDINALS. | ORDINALS. | DISTRIBUTIVES. | MULTIPLICATIVES (ADV.) |
|--|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 30. Trīginta. | { Tricesimus, or tri- gesimus. } | Tricēni. | Tricies. |
| 40. Quādrāginta. | Quadrāgēsimus. | Quadragēni. | Quadrages. |
| 50. Quinquāginta. | Quinquagesimus. | Quinquageni. | Quinquagies. |
| 60. Sexāginta. | Sexagesimus. | Sexageni. | Sexagies. |
| 70. Septuāginta. | Septuagesimus. | Septuageni. | Septuagies. |
| 80. Octoginta. | Octogesimus. | Octogeni. | Octogies. |
| 90. Nōnāginta. | Nonagesimus. | Nonageni. | Nonagies. |
| 100. Centum. | Centesimus. | Centeni. | Centies. |
| 101. Centum et un- us, or cent- um unus. } | Centesimus primus. | { Centeni sin- gull. } | { Centies semel. |
| 102. Centum et duo. | Centesimus secundus. | Centeni bini. | Centies bis. |
| 200. Dūcenti, ae, a. | Ducentesimus. | Duceni. | Ducenties. |
| 300. Trēcenti, ae, a. | Trecentesimus. | Treeceni. | Trecenties. |
| 400. Quadringenti, ae, a. } | Quadringentesimus. | Quadringeni. | Quadringenties. |
| 500. Quingenti, ae, a. | Quingentesimus. | Quingeni. | Quingenties. |
| 600. Sexcenti, ae, a. | Sexcentesimus. | Sexcenti. | Sexcenties. |
| 700. Septingenti, ae, a. } | Septingentesimus. | Septingeni. | Septingenties. |
| 800. Octingenti, ae, a. } | Octingentesimus. | Octingeni. | Octingenties. |
| 900. Nongenti, ae, a. | Nongentesimus. | Nongeni. | Nongenties. |
| 1,000. Mille. | Millēsimus. | Slugula millia. | Millies. |
| 2,000. Duo millia, or bis mille, } | Bis millesimus. | Bina millia. | Bis millies. |
| 10,000. Decem millia. | Decies millesimus. | Dena millia. | Decies millies. |
| 100,000. Centum millia. | Centies millesimus. | Centena millia. | Centies millicia. |

7. *Mille*, one thousand, is indeclinable in the sing., and is used as an adjective; e.g., *mille milites*, one thousand soldiers; sometimes, however, it is used as a substantive,—*mille militum*, one thousand soldiers. But in the plur. it is declined regularly, *millia*, *millium*, &c., and is almost always used as a substantive; e.g., *duo millia militum*, two thousand soldiers.

Obs.—When a smaller number follows the thousands, the gen. is not found; as, *duo millia quingenti homines*, two thousand five hundred men.

8. Between twenty and one hundred, if the larger number is put first, no conjunction is required; as, *viginti quinque*, twenty-five; but if the smaller number come first, we must say, *quinque et viginti*, just as in English, five and twenty. Above one hundred the larger number precedes; as, *centum quadraginta quatuor*, or *centum et quadraginta quatuor*.

9. The two numbers preceding any of the tens,—e.g., eighteen,

nineteen, twenty-eight, twenty-nine, &c.—are best expressed by subtraction: as, *duodeviginti*, two from twenty,—*i.e.*, eighteen; *undetriginta*, one from thirty,—*i.e.*, twenty-nine.

10. In expressing the year in which an event happened, the ordinals are used; *e.g.*, 1865 will be, *anno millesimo octingentesimo sexagesimo quinto*.

11. The Roman symbols to indicate numbers are :—

| ROMAN SYMBOL. | ARABIC SYMBOL. | ROMAN SYMBOL. | ARABIC SYMBOL. |
|---------------|----------------|------------------------------------|----------------|
| I. | 1. | LXX. | 70. |
| II. | 2. | LXXX. | 80. |
| III. | 3. | XC. | 90. |
| IIII. or IV. | 4. | C. | 100. |
| V. | 5. | CI. | 101. |
| VI. | 6. | CC. | 200. |
| IX. | 9. | CCC. | 300. |
| X. | 10. | CCCC. or CD. | 400. |
| XIV. | 14. | D. or I \bar{C} . | 500. |
| XX. | 20. | DC. | 600. |
| XXVI. | 26. | DCCCC. | 900. |
| XXX. | 30. | M. or CI \bar{C} . | 1,000. |
| XL. | 40. | MM. or CI \bar{C} CI \bar{C} . | 2,000. |
| L. | 50. | I \bar{C} \bar{C} . | 5,000. |
| LX. | 60. | CCI \bar{C} \bar{C} . | 10,000. |

12. To understand these symbols, the following principles must be remembered :—

- (1.) When two symbols of the same value come together, they are added; as, II = 2; XX = 20; CC = 200.
- (2.) When a symbol of less value precedes, it is subtracted; as, IX (*i.e.*, X minus I) = 9; XL (*i.e.*, L minus X) = 40.
- (3.) When a symbol of less value follows, it is added; as, XI (*i.e.*, X plus I) = 11; LX (*i.e.*, L plus X) = 60.
- (4.) When C inverted (\bar{C}) follows the symbol I \bar{C} (500), it indicates that the sum is to be multiplied by 10; so I \bar{C} \bar{C} = 5,000; and I \bar{C} \bar{C} \bar{C} = 50,000, and so on.
- (5.) When C is repeated before I as often as \bar{C} follows it, the number is doubled; thus, since I \bar{C} \bar{C} = 5,000, CCI \bar{C} \bar{C} = 10,000.

CHAPTER VII.—PRONOUNS.

1. A PRONOUN is a word which is used to supply the place of a substantive, or to point to some substantive going before or following.

2. There are seven classes of Pronouns:—

- I. The Personal or Substantive Pronouns.
- II. The Reflexive Pronouns.
- III. The Possessive Pronouns.
- IV. The Demonstrative Pronouns.
- V. The Relative Pronoun.
- VI. The Indefinite Pronouns.
- VII. The Interrogative Pronouns.

SECTION I.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The Personal Pronouns are three:—

- (a) *Ego*, I, *nos*, we, indicating the person or persons speaking—first person.
- (b) *Tu*, thou, *vos*, you, indicating the person or persons spoken to—second person.
- (c) *Se*, him, her, it, them, indicating the person or persons, thing or things, spoken about—third person.

2. *N.B.*—*Se* is more frequently a reflexive pronoun than a personal, since it does not introduce a person independently, but refers to the subject of its own clause (though sometimes to the subject of the principal clause). When a person or thing different from that represented by the subject is referred to, *him, his, &c.*, must be expressed by the proper case of *is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud; or, hic, haec, hoc*. The demonstrative, *is, ea, id*, is often used as the substantive pronoun of the third person.

| | | SINGULAR. | | |
|-------------|--|---|---|---------|
| | | 1 Pers. | 2 Pers. | 3 Pers. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Ēgo , <i>I.</i> | Tū , <i>thou.</i> | ———— | |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Mēi , <i>of me.</i> | Tūi , <i>of thee.</i> | Sūi , <i>of himself, &c.</i> | |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Mīhi , <i>to or for me.</i> | Tībi , <i>to or for thee.</i> | Sībi , <i>to or for himself, &c.</i> | |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Mē , <i>me.</i> | Tē , <i>thee.</i> | Sē , <i>himself, herself, itself.</i> | |
| <i>Voc.</i> | ———— | Tū , <i>thou.</i> | ———— | |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Mē , <i>with, by, from</i> <i>or in me.</i> | Tē , <i>with, &c., thee.</i> | Sē , <i>with himself, &c.</i> | |
| PLURAL. | | | | |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Nōs , <i>we.</i> | Vōs , <i>ye or you.</i> | ———— | |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Nostr-i , <i>or -um, of us.</i> | Vestr-i , <i>or -um, of you.</i> | Sūi , <i>of themselves.</i> | |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Nōbīs , <i>to or for us.</i> | Vōbīs , <i>to or for you.</i> | Sībi , <i>to or for themselves.</i> | |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Nōs , <i>us.</i> | Vōs , <i>you.</i> | Sē , <i>themselves.</i> | |
| <i>Voc.</i> | ———— | Vōs , <i>ye or you.</i> | ———— | |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Nōbīs , <i>with, from,</i> <i>&c., us.</i> | Vōbīs , <i>with, from,</i> <i>&c., you.</i> | Sē , <i>with, from, &c.,</i> <i>themselves.</i> | |

SECTION II.

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Ego* and *tu* serve in the oblique cases as Reflexives of the first and second persons. Sometimes they are strengthened by the addition of the syllable *-met*, self.

2. The substantive pronoun *se* is more frequently used as a reflexive than as a personal pronoun, and refers (or is reflected back) to the subject of its own clause (see p. 50, *N.B.*); thus, *stultus sibi inimicus est*, the fool is an enemy to himself. The form *sese* is often used for the sake of emphasis.

SECTION III.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The Possessive Pronouns are formed from the personals, and are regular adjectives like *bonus* or *piger*; as,—

Me-us, -a, -um, *my or mine*; gen. **me-i**, -ae, -i.

Tu-us, -a, -um, *thy or thine*; gen. **tu-i**, -ae, -i.

Su-us, -a, -um, *his, hers, its, theirs*; gen. **su-i**, -ae, -i.

Noster, **nostr-a**, **nostr-um**, *ours*; gen. **nostr-i**, -ae, -i.

Vester, **vestr-a**, **vestr-um**, *yours*; gen. **vestr-i**, -ae, -i.

SECTION IV.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. A Demonstrative Pronoun is employed to draw special attention to an object, or the description of an object. The demonstratives are, *hic, haec, hoc*, this; *iste, ista, istud*, that of yours, or that near you; *ille, illa, illud*, that; *is, ea, id*, this; *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, this very person, self; *idem, eadem, idem*, this person here, the same.

2. *Hic, haec, hoc*, this near me, refers to what is near the speaker, or to what has been most recently mentioned. Hence it is called the demonstrative of the first person. It is declined as follows:—

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Hic. | Haec. | Hoc, this. | Hī. | Hae. | Haec. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Hūjus. | Hujus. | Hujus. | Hōrum. | Hārum. | Horum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Hūic. | Huic. | Huic. | Hīs. | Hīs. | Hīs. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Hunc. | Hanc. | Hoc. | Hōs. | Hās. | Haec. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Hōc. | Hāc. | Hōc. | Hīs. | Hīs. | Hīs. |

3. *Iste, ista, istud*, means that near you, or that of yours. Hence it is called the demonstrative pronoun of the second person. It is declined as follows:—

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Istē. | Istā. | Istū, that. | Istī. | Istae. | Istā. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Istius. | Istius. | Istius. | Istōrum. | Istārum. | Istōrum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Istī. | Isti. | Isti. | Istīs. | Istis. | Istis. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Istum. | Istam. | Istud. | Istōs. | Istās. | Istā. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Istō. | Istā. | Istō. | Istīs. | Istis. | Istis. |

Obs.—*Iste* is made up of *is* and the stem of *tu*, the second person pronoun.

4. The demonstrative pronoun of the third person is *ille, illa, illud*, that near him:—

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|-----------|---------|---------------------|----------|----------|----------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Illē. | Illā. | Illū, <i>that</i> . | Illī. | Illae. | Illā. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Illius. | Illius. | Illius. | Illorum. | Illarum. | Illorum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Illī. | Illī. | Illī. | Illīs. | Illīs. | Illīs. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Illum. | Illam. | Illud. | Illōs. | Illās. | Illā. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Illō. | Illā. | Illō. | Illīs. | Illīs. | Illīs. |

5. *Is, ea, id*, the person or thing before mentioned, is more frequently used as a personal than as a demonstrative pronoun. It often stands as the antecedent to *qui*; as, *is qui*, the person who, he who: or is used as a pronoun of reference; as, *ejus pater*, his father:—

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|-----------|-------|--------------------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Is. | Eā. | Id, <i>this (here)</i> . | Ī or eī. | Eae. | Eā. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Ejus. | Ejus. | Ejus. | Eōrum. | Eārum. | Eōrum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Eī. | Eī. | Eī. | Īs or eis. | Iis, eis. | Iis, eis. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Eum. | Eam. | Id. | Eōs. | Eās. | Eā. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Eō. | Eā. | Eō. | Īs or eis. | Iis, eis. | Iis, eis. |

6. The two derivatives of *is*, viz., *ipse* and *īdem*, are here classed with the demonstratives, though they have in use lost much of their original demonstrative character. *Ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, this very person, self, is sometimes used as an emphatic personal pronoun; but it is generally attached to some other pronoun, or to a substantive, for the purpose of imparting additional emphasis. Hence it is sometimes called the adjunctive pronoun. It is compounded of *is* and the suffix *-pse*:—

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|-----------|---------|----------------------|----------|----------|----------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Ipsē. | Ipsā. | Ipsum, <i>self</i> . | Ipsī. | Ipsae. | Ipsā. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Ipsius. | Ipsius. | Ipsius. | Ipsōrum. | Ipsarum. | Ipsōrum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Ipsī. | Ipsi. | Ipsi. | Ipsīs. | Ipsīs. | Ipsīs. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Ipsum. | Ipsam. | Ipsum. | Ipsōs. | Ipsās. | Ipsā. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Ipsō. | Ipsā. | Ipsō. | Ipsīs. | Ipsīs. | Ipsīs. |

7. *Idem, eadem, idem*, this person here, the very man, the same, is compounded of *is, ea, id*, and the suffix *-dem*. It is declined like *is* with *-dem* attached:—

| SINGULAR. | | | |
|-------------|---------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Idem , <i>the same</i> . | Eādem . | Idem . |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Ejusdem . | Ejusdem . | Ejusdem . |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Eidem . | Eidem . | Eidem . |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Eundem . | Eandem . | Idem . |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Eōdem . | Eādem . | Eōdem . |

| PLURAL. | | | |
|-------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Iidem . | Eaedem . | Eādem . |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Eōrundem . | Eārundem . | Eōrundem . |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Iisdem or eisdem . | Iisdem , &c. | Iisdem , &c. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Eosdem . | Easdem . | Eadem . |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Iisdem or eisdem . | Iisdem , &c. | Iisdem , &c. |

SECTION V.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

The Relative Pronoun, *qui, quae, quod*, who, which, is used to refer (*i.e.*, “carry back”) the reader to a substantive, called the antecedent, in a foregoing clause. It introduces a clause of its own, which is inserted for the purpose of giving some fuller description or explanation in regard to the person or thing spoken of:—

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Qui . | Quae . | Quōd . | Qui . | Quae . | Quae . |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Cūjus . | Cujus . | Cujus . | Quōrum . | Quārum . | Quōrum . |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Cui . | Cui . | Cui . | Quībus . | Quibus . | Quibus . |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Quem . | Quam . | Quod . | Quōs . | Quās . | Quae . |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Quō . | Quā . | Quō . | Quībus . | Quibus . | Quibus . |

SECTION VI.

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The Interrogative Pronouns are,—

- (a) *Quis, quae, quod*, or *quid*, who, which, or what ?
 (b) *Qui, quae, quod*, who, which, or what ?
 (c) *Uter, utra, utrum*, which of two ?
 (d) Some compounds ; as, *quisnam, equis*, &c.

2. *Quis*, who, which, or what, differs little in its inflexion from the relative pronoun :—

| | SINGULAR. | | | PLURAL. | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. | Masc. | Fem. | Neut. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | Quīs. | Quae. | Quōd or quīd. | Qui. | Quae. | Quae. |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Cūjus. | Cujus. | Cujus. | Quōrum. | Quārum. | Quōrum. |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Cui. | Cui. | Cui. | Quībus. | Quibus. | Quibus. |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Quem. | Quam. | Quod or quīd. | Quōs. | Quās. | Quae. |
| <i>Voc.</i> | — | — | — | — | — | — |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Quō. | Quā. | Quō. | Quībus. | Quibus. | Quibus. |

3. The interrogative *qui* is declined exactly as the relative. It refers rather to the *internal qualities* and *nature*, while *quis* asks merely for the name : *quis est*, who is he ? what is his name ? *qui est*, what kind of a person is he ? what is his nature, disposition, &c. ?

SECTION VII.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. The Indefinite Pronouns are used to speak of an individual (person or thing) of which nothing distinct is known or specified. They are,—

- (1.) *Quis, quae, quod*, or *quid*, any one, any ; declined like the interrogative.
 (2.) *Qui, quae, quod*, any one ; declined like the relative.
 (3.) *Aliquis*, ———, *aliquid*, any one, some one ; used as a substantive.
 (4.) *Aliqui, aliqua, aliquod*, any, some ; used as an adjective.
 (5.) *Siquis*, ———, *siquid*, if any one.
 (6.) *Siqui, siqua, siquod*, if any.

- (7.) *Quisquam*, ———, *quidquam*, any one (no plur.).
 (8.) *Quicumque*, *quaequaque*, *quodcumque*, whoever, whichever.
 (9.) *Quisquis*, *quaequae*, *quidquid* or *quicquid*, every one who, whoever.
 (10.) *Quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, a certain one.
 (11.) *Quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* or *quidque*, every one.
 (12.) *Quispiam*, *quaequam*, *quodpiam* or *quidpiam*, any one.
 (13.) *Quivis*, *quaevis*, *quodvis* or *quidvis*, any one you please.
 (14.) *Quilibet*, *quaelibet*, *quodlibet* or *quidlibet*, any one you please.
 (15.) *Nemo*, *nequa*, *nequid*, lest any one.

Obs. 1.—In *aliquis* and *aliqui*, *siquis* and *nequis*, those forms which in the simple pronoun *qui* or *quis* end in *-ae* are made in *-a*; as *siqua*, for *siquae*, &c.

Obs. 2.—*Quisquam* is not used in the sing. fem., nor in any part of the plur. It is used for *any one*, in negative clauses.

Obs. 3.—For the declension of *ullus*, *nullus*, *uter*, *neuter*, *alius*, &c., see pp. 37, 38.

2. Some words in Latin are mutually related, and hence are called correlatives. They are often considered as pronouns, though, strictly speaking, they are simple adjectives as,—

DEMONSTRATIVE.

Tālis, of that (or such a) kind.

Tantus, so great.

{ *Tōt*, so many.

{ *Tōtīdem*, just so many.

INDEFINITE.

Quālis or *quis*, of what kind.

Quantus, so great as, how great.

Quōt, so many as, how many; with several others.

Obs.—The indefinites in this list are also used as interrogatives.

CHAPTER VIII.—THE VERB.

SECTION I.

INTRODUCTORY.

1. A VERB is that part of speech which is used to make an assertion about something.

2. Verbs are divided into two classes, according to their meaning:—

- (1.) TRANSITIVE, in which the action or feeling is represented as directed towards, or “*passing over*” to some object: as, *I strike the dog; he praises his friend.*

(2.) **INTRANSITIVE**,* in which (a) the action or feeling is represented as not directed towards, or “*not passing over*” to an object, but as confined to the subject; as, *I run; I walk; I reflect*, (active intransitive:) or in which (b) a state or condition is expressed; as, *I am; I stand; I rejoice*.

3. Verbs have two VOICES,—the ACTIVE and the PASSIVE.†

4. *N.B.*—Intransitive verbs have only those parts of the passive voice which are used impersonally. Thus, we cannot say, *curror*, I am run; but we *can* say, *curritur*, it is run—that is, people run: not *pugnatur*, he is fought; but *pugnatur*, it (the battle) is fought.

5. **DEPONENT VERBS** are those which have the inflexions of the passive voice, but the meaning of the active. They are for the most part transitive verbs, though some of them are intransitive, and some reflexive.

6. **NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS** are those which have an active form but a passive meaning; as, *vāpūlo*, I am beaten.

7. **SEMI-DEPONENTS** are those which have some of their tenses of the active form and some of the passive, with an active meaning in all: as, *gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre*, to rejoice; *fīdo, fīsus sum, fidēre*, to trust.

8. A great many verbs of the passive voice are used in a reflexive sense: as, *fallor*, I deceive myself (*i.e.*, I am deceived); *vertor*, I turn myself; *versor*, I turn myself, I stay in, or frequent, a place; *vēhor*, I ride—*i.e.*, I am carried.

MOOD.

9. The Latin Verb has four Moods; *i.e.*, modes (*modus*) of representing a state or an action—viz., the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

10. Besides these there are certain forms which partake of the

* An active transitive verb does not make complete sense without a noun after it in the accusative case (or some other case, gen., dat., or abl.), representing the object, whereas an intransitive verb does. Thus, he praises, does not make complete sense till the person or thing praised is mentioned; but, I run, I walk, require no such addition. Many verbs are both transitive and intransitive: thus, *excedo*, I go out, is intransitive; but *excedo*, I exceed, or, go beyond bounds, is transitive.

† **VERB** is derived from *verbum*, a word; **VOICE**, from *vox*, a word, or saying; **ACTIVE**, from the perf. part. of *ago*, to do; **PASSIVE**, from the perf. part. of *patior*, to suffer; **TRANSITIVE**, from *transco*, to pass over.

nature of the noun as well as of that of the verb, such as the Supine, Participles, and Gerund.

TENSE.

11. Tense means *time*. All time is divided into three great periods—past, present, and future. Hence there are three *leading* tenses, to indicate past time, present time, and future time.

12. Thus, the leading or principal tenses are, the Present, Present-Perfect, and Future; the secondary or subordinate are, the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Perfect-Aorist.

13. The present, future, and present-perfect are sometimes called the *Primary tenses*; while the imperfect, perfect-aorist, and pluperfect, are called the *Historical tenses*, because most frequently employed in the narration of past events.*

14. There are two Numbers, Singular and Plural; and three Persons in each number.

15. Verbs are divided, according to their stems and inflexions, into four classes, called Conjugations, which are distinguished by the termination of the present infinitive; thus:—

| | | |
|------------------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| I. The First Conjugation has | -ārē, as | āmārē, to love. |
| II. The Second | ... -ērē, as | mōnērē, to warn. |
| III. The Third | ... -ērē, as | lēgērē, to choose. |
| IV. The Fourth | ... -īrē, as | audīrē, to hear. |

16. The stem of *amare* is, properly speaking, *ama-*; of *monere*, *mone-*; and of *audire*, *audi-*; but for convenience in conjugation, and for the purpose of avoiding confusion, the four classes are printed uniformly as if the stem of each ended in a consonant,—*i.e.*, as if *am-* were the stem of *amare*, *mon-* of *monere*, and *aud-* of *audire*, as *leg-* is of *legere*.

17. While *ama-*, as seen in the present imperative, is the primary and proper stem of the whole verb, it will be found advantageous to make use of certain *secondary* stems appearing in different tenses of the verb. Thus, while *ama-* or *am-* is the stem of all presents and

* But historians often use the present tense in narrating past events, to add vividness and life to the story, by representing incidents as if passing before our eyes; as,—“When this had been reported to Caesar, he *loses* no time in starting from Rome; he *hastens* into further Gaul, and *reaches* Geneva.”—*Caes. Bell. Gall., Bk. I., 7.*

imperfects, *amav-* (perfect) may be taken as a secondary stem running through all the perfects and pluperfects; and *amat-*, occurring in supines, future participle Act., and future subjunctives.

18. Thus there are four parts of the verb, which exhibit all the possible stems (primary and secondary), namely, the Present Indicative, Perfect Indicative, Supine, and Present Infinitive. These are called the Principal Parts, because when they are once known every other form of the verb may be readily ascertained.

19. The principal parts of the verbs which represent the four conjugations are as follows:—

| Present. | Perf. Indlc. | Supinc. | Pres. Infm. |
|--------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| I. Am-o. | Amāv-i. | Amāt-um. | Am-āre. |
| II. Mōn-eo. | Mōnū-i. | Mōnīt-um. | Mon-ēre. |
| III. Lēg-o. | Lēg-i. | Lect-um. | Lēg-ēre. |
| IV. Aud-io. | Audīv-i. | Audīt-um. | Aud-Ire. |

20. It will be observed that in the active voice the persons end as follows:—

| | SINGULAR. | | PLURAL. |
|--------------------|----------------------------|-----|----------------------|
| 1 <i>Pers.</i> ... | -m (-o, or -i). ... | ... | -mus. |
| 2 <i>Pers.</i> ... | -s (-sti). ... | ... | -tis (-stis). |
| 3 <i>Pers.</i> ... | -t. ... | ... | -nt. |

21. In the following Tables of Verbs all the parts of the same Mood are in the same column, and the same Tense extends across the table. It will also be observed, that the three Incomplete Tenses come together, and have the same stem; that the three Complete Tenses are likewise together; and that these two classes of tenses are separated by a double line. The Leading Tenses are printed in bold type, to give them due prominence.

N.B.—The English attached to each tense of the verb is that which is most commonly suitable when the verbal form is used strictly according to mood and tense, as the verb of a principal clause; but the pupil must remember that the English idiom requires many of those forms which are in the subjunctive in Latin to be in the indicative, and hence the tenses of the subjunctive are very frequently translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative.

SECTION II.—REGULAR

ACTIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Amo, Amāvi,

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-----------------|---|---|----------------------------|
| Present. | S. <i>Am-ō</i> (or <i>-ō</i>), <i>I am loving.</i> <i>Am-ās</i> , <i>thou art loving.</i> <i>Am-āt</i> , <i>he is loving.</i> P. <i>Am-āmūs</i> , <i>we are loving.</i> <i>Am-ātīs</i> , <i>ye or you are loving.</i> <i>Am-ānt</i> , <i>they are loving.</i> | <i>Am-em</i> , <i>I may love.</i> <i>Am-es</i> , <i>thou mayst love.</i> <i>Am-ēt</i> , <i>he may love.</i> <i>Am-ēmūs</i> , <i>we may love.</i> <i>Am-ētīs</i> , <i>you may love.</i> <i>Am-ēnt</i> , <i>they may love.</i> | |
| Imperfect. | S. <i>Am-ābam</i> , <i>I was loving.</i> <i>Am-ābās</i> , <i>thou wast loving.</i> <i>Am-ābāt</i> , <i>he was loving.</i> P. <i>Am-ābāmūs</i> , <i>we were loving.</i> <i>Am-ābātīs</i> , <i>you were loving.</i> <i>Am-ābānt</i> , <i>they were loving.</i> | <i>Am-ārem</i> , <i>I might or should love.</i> <i>Am-ārēs</i> , <i>thou mightst love.</i> <i>Am-ārēt</i> , <i>he might love.</i> <i>Am-ārēmūs</i> , <i>we might love.</i> <i>Am-ārētīs</i> , <i>you might love.</i> <i>Am-ārēnt</i> , <i>they might love.</i> | |
| Future. | S. <i>Am-ābo</i> , <i>I shall love.</i> <i>Am-ābīs</i> , <i>thou wilt love.</i> <i>Am-ābit</i> , <i>he will love.</i> P. <i>Am-ābimūs</i> , <i>we shall love.</i> <i>Am-ābitīs</i> , <i>you will love.</i> <i>Am-ābūnt</i> , <i>they will love.</i> | <i>Amātūrūs sim</i> , <i>I may</i> <i>Amātūrūs sis</i> , <i>thou mayst</i> <i>Amātūrūs sit</i> , <i>he may</i> <i>Amātūrī simūs</i> , <i>we may</i> <i>Amātūrī sitīs</i> , <i>you may</i> <i>Amātūrī sint</i> , <i>they may</i> | } <i>be about to love.</i> |
| Perfect. | S. <i>Amāv-ī</i> , <i>I have</i> <i>Amāv-istī</i> , <i>thou hast</i> <i>Amāv-īt</i> , <i>he has</i> P. <i>Amāv-īmūs</i> , <i>we have</i> <i>Amāv-istīs</i> , <i>you have</i> <i>Amāv-ērūnt</i> (<i>-ere</i>), <i>they have</i> | <i>Amāv-ērim</i> , <i>I may have</i> <i>Amāv-ēris</i> , <i>thou mayst have</i> <i>Amāv-ērīt</i> , <i>he may have</i> <i>Amāv-ērīmūs</i> , <i>we may have</i> <i>Amāv-ērītīs</i> , <i>you may have</i> <i>Amāv-ērīnt</i> , <i>they may have</i> | } <i>loved.</i> |
| Pluperfect. | S. <i>Amāv-eram</i> , <i>I had loved.</i> <i>Amāv-ērās</i> , <i>thou hadst loved.</i> <i>Amāv-ērāt</i> , <i>he had loved.</i> P. <i>Amāv-ērāmūs</i> , <i>we had loved.</i> <i>Amāv-ērātīs</i> , <i>you had loved.</i> <i>Amāv-ērānt</i> , <i>they had loved.</i> | <i>Amāv-issēm</i> , <i>I might or shd.</i> <i>Amāv-issēs</i> , <i>thou wouldst</i> <i>Amāv-issēt</i> , <i>he would</i> <i>Amāv-issēmūs</i> , <i>we should</i> <i>Amāv-issētīs</i> , <i>you would</i> <i>Amāv-issēnt</i> , <i>they would</i> | } <i>have loved.</i> |
| Future Perfect. | S. <i>Amāv-ero</i> , <i>I shall</i> <i>Amāv-erīs</i> , <i>thou wilt</i> <i>Amāv-erīt</i> , <i>he will</i> P. <i>Amāv-erīmūs</i> , <i>we shall</i> <i>Amāv-erītīs</i> , <i>you will</i> <i>Amāv-erīnt</i> , <i>they will</i> | | } <i>have loved.</i> |

VERBS—FIRST CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Amātum, Amāre, *to love.*

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---|---------|----------|----------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--|---------------------------------|--|
| <p>Am-ā, <i>love thou.</i></p> <p>Am-ātē, <i>love ye.</i></p> | <p>Am-ārē, <i>to love.</i></p> | <p>Am-āns, } <i>loving.</i> Am-antis, } [See p. 40.]</p> | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Am-āto, <i>thou shalt love.</i> Am-āto, <i>he shall love.</i></p> <p>Am-ātōte, <i>ye shall love.</i> Am-ānto, <i>they shall love.</i></p> | <p>Amāt-ūrum, -uram, -urum, esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to love.</i></p> | <p>Amāt-ūrus, } <i>about</i> Amat-ura, } <i>to love.</i> Amat-urum, } [See p. 37, list (1).]</p> | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <p>Amāv-issē, <i>to have</i> <i>loved.</i></p> | <p>—</p> | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>GERUND.</th> <th>SUPINES.</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Amānd-ī, <i>of loving.</i></td> <td>Amāt-um, <i>to love.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Amānd-ō, <i>for or by</i></td> <td>Amāt-ū, <i>to be loved.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Amānd-um, <i>loving.</i></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Amānd-o, <i>by, in, &c.</i></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | | GERUND. | SUPINES. | Amānd-ī, <i>of loving.</i> | Amāt-um, <i>to love.</i> | Amānd-ō, <i>for or by</i> | Amāt-ū, <i>to be loved.</i> | Amānd-um, <i>loving.</i> | | Amānd-o, <i>by, in, &c.</i> | |
| GERUND. | SUPINES. | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Amānd-ī, <i>of loving.</i> | Amāt-um, <i>to love.</i> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Amānd-ō, <i>for or by</i> | Amāt-ū, <i>to be loved.</i> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Amānd-um, <i>loving.</i> | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Amānd-o, <i>by, in, &c.</i> | | | | | | | | | | | | |

REGULAR VERBS—

PASSIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Amor, Amātus

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-----------------|---|---|-------------------------|
| Present. | S. Am-ōr, <i>I am</i> Am-āris (-āre), <i>thou art</i> Am-ātūr, <i>he is</i> P. Am-āmūr, <i>we are</i> Am-āmīni, <i>ye or you are</i> Am-antūr, <i>they are</i> | Am-ēr, <i>I may</i> Am-ēris (-ēre), <i>thou mayst</i> Am-ētūr, <i>he may</i> Am-ēmūr, <i>we may</i> Am-ēmīni, <i>you may</i> Am-entūr, <i>they may</i> | <i>be loved.</i> |
| Imperfect. | S. Am-ābār, <i>I was</i> [<i>wast</i>] Am-ābāris (-abāre), <i>thou</i> Am-ābātūr, <i>he was</i> P. Am-ābāmūr, <i>we were</i> Am-ābāmīni, <i>you were</i> Am-ābantūr, <i>they were</i> | Am-ārer, <i>I might or should</i> Am-ārēris (-ārēre), <i>thou mst.</i> Am-ārētūr, <i>he might</i> Am-ārēmūr, <i>we might</i> Am-ārēmīni, <i>you might</i> Am-ārentūr, <i>they might</i> | <i>be loved.</i> |
| Future. | S. Am-ābōr, <i>I shall</i> [<i>wilt</i>] Am-ābēris (-abēre), <i>thou</i> Am-ābītūr, <i>he will</i> P. Am-ābīmūr, <i>we shall</i> Am-ābīmīni, <i>you will</i> Am-ābuntūr, <i>they will</i> | — | <i>be loved.</i> |
| Perfect. | S. Amāt-ūs (-a, -um) sum, <i>I have</i> Amat-us ēs, <i>thou hast</i> Amat-us est, <i>he has</i> [<i>have</i>] P. Amāt-i (-ae, -a) sūmus, <i>we</i> Amat-i estis, <i>you have</i> Amat-i sunt, <i>they have</i> | Amāt-us (-a, -um) sim, <i>I may</i> Amat-us sis, <i>thou mayst</i> Amāt-us sīt, <i>he may</i> Amat-i (-ae, -a) simus, <i>we may</i> Amat-i sītis, <i>you may</i> Amat-i sint, <i>they may</i> | <i>have been loved.</i> |
| Pluperfect. | S. Amāt-us eram, <i>I had</i> Amat-us eras, <i>thou hadst</i> Amat-us erat, <i>he had</i> P. Amat-i erāmus, <i>we had</i> Amat-i erātis, <i>you had</i> Amat-i erant, <i>they had</i> | Amāt-us essem, <i>I mt. or shd.</i> Amat-us esses, <i>thou wouldst</i> Amat-us esset, <i>he would</i> Amat-i essēmus, <i>we should</i> Amat-i, essētis, <i>you would</i> Amat-i, essent, <i>they would</i> | <i>have been loved.</i> |
| Future Perfect. | S. Amāt-us ero, <i>I shall</i> Amat-us eris, <i>thou wilt</i> Amat-us erit, <i>he will</i> P. Amat-i erīmus, <i>we shall</i> Amat-i erītis, <i>you will</i> Amat-i erunt, <i>they will</i> | — | <i>have been loved.</i> |

FIRST CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

sum, Amāri, *to be loved.*

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|--|
| Am-āre, <i>be thou loved.</i> | Amā-ri, <i>to be loved.</i> | — |
| Am-āmīni, <i>be ye loved.</i> | | — |
| — | — | — |
| Am-ātor, <i>thou shalt</i> Am-ātor, <i>he shall</i> Am-ābīmīni, <i>ye shall</i> Am-āntor, <i>they shall</i> | Amāt-um īrī, <i>to be about to be loved.</i> | Am-andus, -anda, -andum, <i>deserving</i> <i>or requiring to be</i> <i>loved.</i> [See p. 37, list (1).] |
| } <i>be loved.</i> | | Amāt-us, -a, -um, <i>loved, or having</i> <i>been loved.</i> [See p. 37, list (1).] |
| — | Amāt-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to have been loved.</i> | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

SECTION III.—REGULAR VERBS

ACTIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Mōnĕo, Mōnŭi,

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|-----------------|--|--|
| Present. | S. Mōn-eo, <i>I am</i> Mōn-ēs, <i>thou art</i> Mōn-ēt, <i>he is</i> P. Mōn-ēmus, <i>we are</i> Mōn-ētis, <i>ye or you are</i> Mōn-ēnt, <i>they are</i> | Mōn-ĕam, <i>I may advise.</i> Mōn-ĕās, <i>thou mayst advise.</i> Mōn-ĕat, <i>he may advise.</i> Mōn-ĕāmus, <i>we may advise.</i> Mōn-ĕatis, <i>you may advise.</i> Mōn-ĕant, <i>they may advise.</i> |
| Imperfect. | S. Mōu-ĕbam, <i>I was</i> Mōn-ĕbās, <i>thou wast</i> Mōn-ĕbāt, <i>he was</i> P. Mōn-ĕbāmus, <i>we were</i> Mōn-ĕbātis, <i>you were</i> Mōn-ĕbant, <i>they were</i> | Mōn-ĕrem, <i>I might or would</i> Mōn-ĕres, <i>thou mightst</i> Mōn-ĕret, <i>he might</i> Mōn-ĕrĕmus, <i>we might</i> Mōn-ĕrĕtis, <i>you might</i> Mōn-ĕrent, <i>they might</i> |
| Future. | S. Mōn-ĕbo, <i>I shall advise.</i> Mōn-ĕbīs, <i>thou wilt advise.</i> Mōn-ĕbīt, <i>he will advise.</i> P. Mōn-ĕbīmus, <i>we shall advise.</i> Mōn-ĕbītis, <i>you will advise.</i> Mōn-ĕbunt, <i>they will advise.</i> | Mōnītŭrus sim, <i>I may be</i> Mōnītŭrus sis, <i>thou mayst be</i> Mōnītŭrus sīt, <i>he may be</i> Mōnītŭri sīmus, <i>we may be</i> Mōnītŭri sītis, <i>you may be</i> Mōnītŭri sint, <i>they may be</i> |
| Perfect. | S. Mōnŭ-i, <i>I have</i> Mōnŭ-isti, <i>thou hast</i> Mōnŭ-it, <i>he has</i> P. Mōnŭ-īmus, <i>we have</i> Mōnŭ-istis, <i>you have</i> Mōnŭ-ērunt (-ĕre), <i>they have</i> | Mōnŭ-erim, <i>I may have</i> Mōnŭ-eris, <i>thou mayst have</i> Mōnŭ-erit, <i>he may have</i> Mōnŭ-erīmus, <i>we may have</i> Mōnŭ-erītis, <i>you may have</i> Mōnŭ-erint, <i>they may have</i> |
| Pluperfect. | S. Mōnŭ-ĕram, <i>I had</i> Mōnŭ-eras, <i>thou hadst</i> Mōnŭ-erat, <i>he had</i> P. Mōnŭ-erāmus, <i>we had</i> Mōnŭ-eratis, <i>you had</i> Mōnŭ-erant, <i>they had</i> | Mōnŭ-issem, <i>I might or shd.</i> Mōnŭ-isses, <i>thou wouldst</i> Mōnŭ-isset, <i>he would</i> Mōnŭ-issemus, <i>we should</i> Mōnŭ-issetis, <i>you would</i> Mōnŭ-issent, <i>they would</i> |
| Future Perfect. | S. Mōnŭ-ĕro, <i>I shall</i> Mōnŭ-eris, <i>thou wilt</i> Mōnŭ-erit, <i>he will</i> P. Mōnŭ-erīmus, <i>we shall</i> Mōnŭ-erītis, <i>you will</i> Mōnŭ-erint, <i>they will</i> | |

—SECOND CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Monitum, Monēre, *to advise.*

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|---|--|
| Mon-ē, <i>advise thou.</i> Mon-ēte, <i>advise ye.</i> | Mon-ēre, <i>to advise.</i> | Mon-ens, } <i>advising.</i> Mon-ens, } Mon-ens, } [See p. 40.] |
| — | — | — |
| Mon-ēto, <i>thou shalt advise.</i> Mon-eto, <i>he shall advise.</i> Mon-ētōte, <i>ye shall advise.</i> Mon-ento, <i>they shall advise.</i> | Monit-ūrum, -uram, -urum, esse, <i>to be about to advise.</i> | Monit-ūrus, } <i>about to advise.</i> Monit-ura, } Monit-urum, } [See p. 37, list (1).] |
| — | Monŭ-isse, <i>to have advised.</i> | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | GERUND. Monend-i, <i>of advising.</i> Monend-o, <i>to or for advising.</i> Monend-um, <i>advising.</i> Monend-o, <i>by, in, &c.</i> | SUPINES. Monit-um, <i>to advise.</i> Monit-u, <i>to be advised.</i> |

REGULAR VERBS—

PASSIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Monēor, Monitus

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-----------------|---|---|----------------|
| Present. | S. Mōn-eor, <i>I am</i> Mon-ēris (ēre), <i>thou art</i> Mon-ētur, <i>he is</i> P. Mon-ēmur, <i>we are</i> Mon-ēmīni, <i>ye or you are</i> Mon-entur, <i>they are</i> | advised. } Mon-ēar, <i>I may</i> Mon-eāris (-eāre), <i>thou mayst</i> Mon-eātur, <i>he may</i> Mon-ēāmur, <i>we may</i> Mon-eāmini, <i>you may</i> Mon-eantur, <i>they may</i> | be advised. |
| Imperfect. | S. Mon-ēbar, <i>I was</i> [wast] Mon-ebāris (-ebare), <i>thou</i> Mon-ebātur, <i>he was</i> P. Mon-ēbāmur, <i>we were</i> Mon-ebāmīni, <i>you were</i> Mon-ebantur, <i>they were</i> | advised. } Mon-ērer, <i>I might or should</i> Mon-erēris (-erēre), <i>thou mtst.</i> Mon-eretur, <i>he might</i> Mon-ērēmur, <i>we might</i> Mon-erēmīni, <i>you might</i> Mon-erentur, <i>they might</i> | be advised. |
| Future. | S. Mon-ēbor, <i>I shall</i> [will] Mon-ēbēris (-ēbere), <i>thou</i> Mon-ēbitur, <i>he will</i> P. Mon-ēbimur, <i>we shall</i> Mon-ēbīmīni, <i>you will</i> Mon-ēbuntur, <i>they will</i> | — | be advised. |
| Perfect. | S. Monit-us (-a,-um) sum, <i>I have</i> Monit-us ēs, <i>thou hast</i> Monit-us est, <i>he has</i> P. Monit-i sūmus, <i>we have</i> Monit-i estis, <i>you have</i> Monit-i sunt, <i>they have</i> | Monit-us (-a,-um) sim, <i>I may</i> Monit-us sis, <i>thou mayst</i> Monit-us sīt, <i>he may</i> Monit-i sīmus; <i>we may</i> Monit-i sītis, <i>you may</i> Monit-i sint, <i>they may</i> | have been adv. |
| Pluperfect. | S. Monit-us eram, <i>I had</i> Monit-us eras, <i>thou hadst</i> Monit-us erat, <i>he had</i> P. Monit-i erāmus, <i>we had</i> Monit-i eratis, <i>you had</i> Monit-i erant, <i>they had</i> | Monit-us essem, <i>I mt. or shd.</i> Monit-us esses, <i>thou wouldst</i> Monit-us esset, <i>he would</i> Monit-i essemus, <i>we should</i> Monit-i essetis, <i>you would</i> Monit-i essent, <i>they would</i> | have been adv. |
| Future Perfect. | S. Monit-us ero, <i>I shall</i> Monit-us eris, <i>thou wilt</i> Monit-us erit, <i>he will</i> P. Monit-i erīmus, <i>we shall</i> Monit-i erītis, <i>you will</i> Monit-i erunt, <i>they will</i> | — | have been adv. |

SECOND CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

sum, Monēri, *to be advised.*

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|--|
| Mon-ēre, <i>be thou advised.</i> | Mon-ērī, <i>to be advised.</i> | — |
| Monē-mīni, <i>be ye advised.</i> | | |
| — | — | — |
| Mon-ētor, <i>thou shalt</i> Mon-ētor, <i>he shall</i> Mon-ēbīmīni, <i>ye shall</i> Mon-entor, <i>they shall</i> | Monīt-um iri, <i>to be about to be advised.</i> | Mon-endus, -enda, -endum, <i>deserving or requiring to be advised.</i> [See p. 37, list (1)]. |
| } <i>be advised.</i> | | |
| — | Monīt-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to have been advised.</i> | Monit-us, -a, -um, <i>advised, or having been advised.</i> [See p. 37, list (1)]. |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

SECTION IV.—REGULAR VERBS

ACTIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Lēgo, Lēgi,

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|-----------------|---|---|
| Present. | S. Lēg-o, <i>I choose.</i> Leg-īs, <i>thou choosest.</i> Leg-īt, <i>he chooses.</i> P. Lēg-īmūs, <i>we choose.</i> Leg-ītīs, <i>ye or you choose.</i> Leg-unt, <i>they choose.</i> | Lēg-am, <i>I may choose.</i> Leg-ās, <i>thou mayst choose.</i> Leg-āt, <i>he may choose.</i> Leg-āmūs, <i>we may choose.</i> Leg-ātīs, <i>you may choose.</i> Leg-ant, <i>they may choose.</i> |
| Imperfect. | S. Lēg-ēbam, <i>I was choosing.</i> Leg-ēbās, <i>thou wast choosing.</i> Leg-ēbāt, <i>he was choosing.</i> P. Leg-ēbāmūs, <i>we were choosing.</i> Leg-ēbātīs, <i>you were choosing.</i> Leg-ēbant, <i>they were choosing.</i> | Lēg-ērem, <i>I might or should</i> Leg-ērēs, <i>thou mightst</i> Leg-ērēt, <i>he might</i> Lēg-ērēmūs, <i>we might</i> Leg-ērētīs, <i>you might</i> Leg-erent, <i>they might</i> |
| Future. | S. Lēg-am, <i>I shall choose.</i> Leg-ēs, <i>thou wilt choose.</i> Leg-ēt, <i>he will choose.</i> P. Leg-ēmūs, <i>we shall choose.</i> Leg-ētīs, <i>you will choose.</i> Leg-ent, <i>they will choose.</i> | Lectūrus (-a, -um) sim, <i>I may</i> Lectūrus sīs, <i>thou mayst</i> Lectūrus sīt, <i>he may [may</i> Lectūri (-ae, -a) simus, <i>we</i> Lectūri sītis, <i>you may</i> Lectūri sint, <i>they may</i> |
| Perfect. | S. Lēg-i, <i>I have</i> Leg-istī, <i>thou hast</i> Leg-īt, <i>he has</i> P. Lēg-īmūs, <i>we have</i> Leg-istīs, <i>you have</i> Leg-ērunt (-ēre), <i>they have</i> | Lēg-ērim, <i>I may have</i> Leg-ērīs, <i>thou mayst have</i> Leg-ērīt, <i>he may have</i> Lēg-ērīmūs, <i>we may have</i> Leg-ērītīs, <i>you may have</i> Leg-ērint, <i>they may have</i> |
| Pluperfect. | S. Lēg-eram, <i>I had chosen.</i> Leg-ērās, <i>thou hadst chosen.</i> Leg-ērāt, <i>he had chosen.</i> P. Lēg-ērāmūs, <i>we had chosen.</i> Leg-ērātīs, <i>you had chosen.</i> Leg-erant, <i>they had chosen.</i> | Lēg-issem, <i>I might or shd.</i> Leg-issēs, <i>thou wouldst.</i> Leg-issēt, <i>he would</i> Lēg-issēmūs, <i>we should</i> Leg-issētīs, <i>you would</i> Leg-issent, <i>they would</i> |
| Future Perfect. | S. Lēg-ero, <i>I shall</i> Leg-erīs, <i>thou wilt</i> Leg-erīt, <i>he will</i> P. Lēg-erīmūs, <i>we shall</i> Leg-erītīs, <i>you will</i> Leg-erint, <i>they will</i> | — |

—THIRD CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Lectum, Lĕgĕre, *to choose.*

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | | | | |
|---|--|---|---------|----------|---|---|
| <p>Lĕg-ĕ, <i>choose thou.</i></p> <p>Lĕg-ĭtĕ, <i>choose ye.</i></p> | <p>Lĕg-ĕrĕ, <i>to choose.</i></p> | <p>Lĕg-ens, } <i>choos-</i> Lĕg-entis, } <i>ing.</i></p> <p>[See p. 40.]</p> | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | | | | |
| <p>Lĕgĭto, <i>thou shalt choose.</i></p> <p>Leg-ĭto, <i>he shall choose.</i></p> <p>Lĕg-ĭtōte, <i>ye shall choose.</i></p> <p>Leg-unto, <i>they shall choose.</i></p> | <p>Lect-ŭrum, -uram, -urum, esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to choose.</i></p> | <p>Lect-ŭrus, -ura, -urum, <i>about to</i> <i>choose.</i></p> <p>[See p. 37, list (1).]</p> | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <p>Lĕg-isse, <i>to have</i> <i>chosen.</i></p> | <p>—</p> | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>GERUND.</th> <th>SUPINES.</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> <p>Lĕgend-i, <i>of choosing.</i></p> <p>Legend-o, <i>to or for</i> <i>choosing.</i></p> <p>Legend-um, <i>choosing.</i></p> <p>Legend-o, <i>by or in, &c.</i></p> </td> <td> <p>Lect-um, <i>to</i> <i>choose.</i></p> <p>Lect-u, <i>to be</i> <i>chosen.</i></p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | | GERUND. | SUPINES. | <p>Lĕgend-i, <i>of choosing.</i></p> <p>Legend-o, <i>to or for</i> <i>choosing.</i></p> <p>Legend-um, <i>choosing.</i></p> <p>Legend-o, <i>by or in, &c.</i></p> | <p>Lect-um, <i>to</i> <i>choose.</i></p> <p>Lect-u, <i>to be</i> <i>chosen.</i></p> |
| GERUND. | SUPINES. | | | | | |
| <p>Lĕgend-i, <i>of choosing.</i></p> <p>Legend-o, <i>to or for</i> <i>choosing.</i></p> <p>Legend-um, <i>choosing.</i></p> <p>Legend-o, <i>by or in, &c.</i></p> | <p>Lect-um, <i>to</i> <i>choose.</i></p> <p>Lect-u, <i>to be</i> <i>chosen.</i></p> | | | | | |

REGULAR VERBS—

PASSIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Lēgor,

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. | |
|-----------------|--|---|---|
| Present. | S. Lēg-or, <i>I am</i> Leg-ēris (-ēre), <i>thou art</i> Leg-itur, <i>he is</i> P. Lēg-īmur, <i>we are</i> Leg-īmini, <i>ye or you are</i> Leg-untur, <i>they are</i> | Leg-ar, <i>I may</i> Leg-āris (-āre), <i>thou mayst</i> Leg-atur, <i>he may</i> Leg-āmur, <i>we may</i> Leg-āmini, <i>you may</i> Leg-antur, <i>they may</i> | <i>chosen.</i> <i>be chosen.</i> |
| Imperfect. | S. Lēg-ēbar, <i>I was</i> [<i>wast</i>] Leg-ebāris (-ēbāre), <i>thou</i> Leg-ebatur, <i>he was</i> P. Lēg-ebāmur, <i>we were</i> Leg-ebāmini, <i>you were</i> Leg-ebantur, <i>they were</i> | Leg-ērer, <i>I might or should</i> Leg-ērēris (-ērēre), <i>thou mst.</i> Leg-eretur, <i>he might</i> Leg-ērēmur, <i>we might</i> Leg-erēmīni, <i>you might</i> Leg-erentur, <i>they might</i> | <i>chosen.</i> <i>be chosen.</i> |
| Future. | S. Lēg-ar, <i>I shall</i> Leg-ēris (-ēre), <i>thou wilt</i> Leg-ētur, <i>he will</i> P. Lēg-ēmur, <i>we shall</i> Leg-ēmīni, <i>you will</i> Leg-entur, <i>they will</i> | — | <i>be chosen.</i> |
| Perfect. | S. Lect-us (-a, -um) sum, <i>I have</i> Lect-us ēs, <i>thou hast</i> Lect-us est, <i>he has</i> P. Lect-i sūmus, <i>we have</i> Lect-i estis, <i>you have</i> Lect-i sunt, <i>they have</i> | Lect-us sim, <i>I may have</i> Lect-us sis, <i>thou mayst have</i> Lect-us sit, <i>he may have</i> Lect-i sīmus, <i>we may have</i> Lect-i sitis, <i>you may have</i> Lect-i sint, <i>they may have</i> | <i>been chosen.</i> <i>been chosen.</i> |
| Pluperfect. | S. Lect-us ēram, <i>I had</i> Lect-us eras, <i>thou hadst</i> Lect-us erat, <i>he had</i> P. Lect-i ērāmus, <i>we had</i> Lect-i eratis, <i>you had</i> Lect-i erant, <i>they had</i> | Lect-us essem, <i>I mt. or shd.</i> Lect-us esses, <i>thou wouldst</i> Lect-us esset, <i>he would</i> Lect-i essēmus, <i>we should</i> Lect-i essetis, <i>you would</i> Lect-i essent, <i>they would</i> | <i>been chosen.</i> <i>have been chosen.</i> |
| Future Perfect. | S. Lect-us ēro, <i>I shall</i> Lect-us eris, <i>thou wilt</i> Lect-us erit, <i>he will</i> P. Lect-i erīmus, <i>we shall</i> Lect-i erītis, <i>you will</i> Lect-i erunt, <i>they will</i> | — | <i>have been chosen.</i> |

THIRD CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Lectus sum, Lēgi.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|---|
| Leg-ěre, <i>be thou chosen.</i> | Lēg-i, <i>to be chosen.</i> | — |
| Leg-īmīni, <i>be ye chosen.</i> | | |
| — | — | — |
| Leg-ītor, <i>thou shalt be</i> Leg-itor, <i>he shall be</i> Leg-ēmīni, <i>ye shall be</i> Leg-untor, <i>they shall be</i> | Lect-um iri, <i>to be about to be chosen.</i> | Leg-endus, -enda, -endum, <i>about to be chosen.</i> [See p. 37, list (1).] |
| — | Lect-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to have been chosen.</i> | Lect-us, -a, -um, <i>chosen, or having been chosen.</i> [See p. 37, list (1).] |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

REGULAR VERBS—

ACTIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Capio,

Some Verbs of the Third Conjugation have an *i* in the Present Indicative,

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|----------------|---|---|
| Present | S. Căpi-o, <i>I am taking.</i> Căpi-is, <i>thou art taking.</i> Cap-it, <i>he is taking.</i> P. Cap-îmus, <i>we are taking.</i> Cap-îtis, <i>ye or you are taking.</i> Capi-unt, <i>they are taking.</i> | Căpi-am, <i>I may take.</i> Capi-ās, <i>thou mayst take.</i> Capi-ăt, <i>he may take.</i> Capi-ămūs, <i>we may take.</i> Capi-ătis, <i>you may take.</i> Capi-ant <i>they may take.</i> |
| Imperfect | S. Căpi-ēbam, <i>I was taking.</i> Capi-ēbās, <i>thou wast taking.</i> Capi-ēbăt, <i>he was taking.</i> P. Capi-ēbămūs, <i>we were taking.</i> Capi-ēbătis, <i>you were taking.</i> Capi-ēbant, <i>they were taking.</i> | Căp-ērem, <i>I might or should take.</i> Cap-ērēs, <i>thou mightst take.</i> Cap-ērēt, <i>he might take.</i> Căp-ērēmūs, <i>we might take.</i> Cap-ērētis, <i>you might take.</i> Cap-erent, <i>they might take.</i> |
| Future | S. Căpi-am, <i>I shall take.</i> Capi-ēs, <i>thou wilt take.</i> Capi-ēt, <i>he will take.</i> P. Capi-ēmūs, <i>we shall take.</i> Capi-ētis, <i>you will take.</i> Capi-ent, <i>they will take.</i> | Captūrus sim, <i>I may be</i> Captūrus sis, <i>thou mayst be</i> Captūrus sīt, <i>he may be</i> Captūri simus, <i>we may be</i> Captūri sitis, <i>you may be</i> Captūri sint, <i>they may be</i> } <i>about to take.</i> |
| Perfect | S. Căp-i, <i>I have</i> Căp-istī, <i>thou hast</i> Căp-it, <i>he has</i> P. Căp-îmūs, <i>we have</i> Căp-istis, <i>you have</i> Căp-erunt(-ēre), <i>they have</i> } <i>taken.</i> | Căp-erim, <i>I may have taken.</i> Căp-eris, <i>thou mayst have taken.</i> Căp-erit, <i>he may have taken.</i> Căp-erimūs, <i>we may have taken.</i> Căp-eritis, <i>you may have taken.</i> Căp-erint, <i>they may have taken.</i> |
| Pluperfect | S. Căp-eram, <i>I had taken.</i> Căp-erās, <i>thou hadst taken.</i> Căp-erăt, <i>he had taken.</i> P. Căp-erămūs, <i>we had taken.</i> Căp-erătis, <i>you had taken.</i> Căp-erant, <i>they had taken.</i> | Căp-issem, <i>I might or should</i> Căp-issēs, <i>thou wouldst</i> Căp-issēt, <i>he would</i> Căp-issēmūs, <i>we should</i> Căp-issētis, <i>you would</i> Căp-issent, <i>they would</i> } <i>have taken.</i> |
| Future Perfect | S. Căp-erō, <i>I shall</i> Căp-eris, <i>thou wilt</i> Căp-erit, <i>he will</i> P. Căp-erîmus, <i>we shall</i> Căp-eritis, <i>you will</i> Căp-erint, <i>they will</i> } <i>have taken.</i> | — |

THIRD CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Cēpi, Captum, Capĕre.

and the tenses derived from it; such are *capio*, *fodio*, *facio*, &c.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|---|--|
| Căp-ě, <i>take thou.</i> | Căp-ěřě, <i>to take.</i> | Căpi-ens, } <i>tak-</i> Căpi-entis, } <i>ing.</i> |
| Căp-ĭtě, <i>take ye.</i> | | |
| — | — | — |
| Căp-ĭto, <i>thou shalt take.</i> Cap-ĭto, <i>he shall take.</i> | Capt-ŭrum, -uram, } -urum, esse, <i>to be</i> <i>about to take.</i> | Capt-ŭrus, -a, -um, <i>about to take.</i> |
| Căp-ĭtōte, <i>ye shall take.</i> Capi-unto, <i>they shall take.</i> | | |
| — | Cěp-isse, <i>to have taken.</i> | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | GERUND. Căpiend-i. Căpiend-o. Căpiend-um. | SUPINES. Capt-um. Capt-ŭ. |

REGULAR VERBS—

PASSIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Capior,

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|----------------|--|---|
| Present | S. Căpi-or, <i>I am</i> Cap-ĕris (-ĕre), <i>thou art</i> Cap-ĭtur, <i>he is</i> P. Cap-ĭmur, <i>we are</i> Cap-ĭmĭni, <i>ye or you are</i> Căpi-untur, <i>they are</i> | Căpi-ar, <i>I may</i> Căpi-āris (-āre), <i>thou mayst</i> Căpi-atur, <i>he may</i> Căpi-āmur, <i>we may</i> Căpi-āmĭni, <i>you may</i> Căpi-antur, <i>they may</i> |
| Imperfect | S. Căpi-ĕbar, <i>I was</i> [<i>wast</i>] Căpi-ebāris (-ĕbāre), <i>thou</i> Căpi-ebatur, <i>he was</i> P. Căpi-ĕbāmur, <i>we were</i> Căpi-ebamĭni, <i>you were</i> Căpi-ebantur, <i>they were</i> | Căpi-ĕrer, <i>I might or should</i> Căpi-ĕrĕris (-ĕrĕre), <i>thou mtst.</i> Căpi-eretur, <i>he might</i> Căpi-ĕrĕmur, <i>we might</i> Căpi-erĕmĭni, <i>you might</i> Căpi-erentur, <i>they might</i> |
| Future | S. Căpi-ar, <i>I shall</i> Căpi-ĕris (-ĕre), <i>thou wilt</i> Căpi-ĕtur, <i>he will</i> P. Căpi-ĕmur, <i>we shall</i> Căpi-ĕmĭni, <i>you will</i> Căpi-entur, <i>they will</i> | — |
| Perfect | S. Capt-us sum, <i>I have</i> Capt-us ĕs, <i>thou hast</i> Capt-us est, <i>he has</i> P. Capt-i sŭmus, <i>we have</i> Capt-i estis, <i>you have</i> Capt-i sunt, <i>they have</i> | Capt-us sim, <i>I may</i> Capt-us sis, <i>thou mayst</i> Capt-us sĭt, <i>he may</i> Capt-i sĭmus, <i>we may</i> Capt-i sĭtis, <i>you may</i> Capt-i sint, <i>they may</i> |
| Pluperfect | S. Capt-us ĕram, <i>I had</i> Capt-us eras, <i>thou hadst</i> Capt-us erat, <i>he had</i> P. Capt-i ĕrāmus, <i>we had</i> Capt-i eratis, <i>you had</i> Capt-i erant, <i>they had</i> | Capt-us essem, <i>I mt. or shd.</i> Capt-us esses, <i>thou wouldst</i> Capt-us esset, <i>he would</i> Capt-i essĕmus, <i>we should</i> Capt-i essetis, <i>you would</i> Capt-i essent, <i>they would</i> |
| Future Perfect | S. Capt-us ero, <i>I shall</i> Capt-us eris, <i>thou wilt</i> Capt-us erit, <i>he will</i> P. Capt-i erĭmus, <i>we shall</i> Capt-i erĭtis, <i>you will</i> Capt-i erunt, <i>they will</i> | — |

THIRD CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Captus sum, Căpi.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|---|---|
| Căp-ere, <i>be thou taken.</i> | Căp-i, <i>to be taken.</i> | — |
| Cap-îmîni, <i>be ye taken.</i> | | |
| — | — | — |
| Cap-îtor, <i>thou shalt</i> Cap-îtor, <i>he shall</i> Capi-ēmîni, <i>ye shall</i> Capi-untor, <i>they shall</i> | Capt-um irî, <i>to be about to be taken.</i> | Căpi-endus, -enda, -endum, <i>deserving or requiring to be taken.</i> |
| } <i>be taken.</i> | | |
| — | Capt-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to have been taken.</i> | Capt-us, -a, -um, <i>taken, or having been taken.</i> |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

SECTION V.—REGULAR VERBS

ACTIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Audīo,

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|-----------------|---|--|
| Present. | S. Aud- io , <i>I am</i> Aud- īs , <i>thou art</i> Aud- it , <i>he is</i> P. Aud- īmus , <i>we are</i> Aud- ītis , <i>ye or you are</i> Aud- iunt , <i>they are</i> | Aud- īam , <i>I may hear.</i> Aud- iās , <i>thou mayst hear.</i> Aud- iāt , <i>he may hear.</i> Aud- iāmus , <i>we may hear.</i> Aud- iātis , <i>you may hear.</i> Aud- iant , <i>they may hear.</i> |
| Imperfect. | S. Aud- iēbam , <i>I was</i> Aud- iebas , <i>thou wast</i> Aud- iebat , <i>he was</i> P. Aud- iebāmus , <i>we were</i> Aud- iebatis , <i>you were</i> Aud- iebant , <i>they were</i> | Aud- īrem , <i>I might or should</i> Aud- ires , <i>thou mightst</i> Aud- iret , <i>he might</i> Aud- irēmus , <i>we might</i> Aud- iretis , <i>you might</i> Aud- irent , <i>they might</i> |
| Future. | S. Aud- īam , <i>I shall hear.</i> Aud- iēs , <i>thou wilt hear.</i> Aud- iēt , <i>he will hear.</i> P. Aud- iēmus , <i>we shall hear.</i> Aud- ietis , <i>you will hear.</i> Aud- ient , <i>they will hear.</i> | Aud- ītūrus sim , <i>I may be</i> Aud- īturus sis , <i>thou mayst be</i> Aud- īturus sit , <i>he may be</i> Aud- īturi simus , <i>we may be</i> Aud- īturi sitis , <i>you may be</i> Aud- īturi sint , <i>they may be</i> |
| Perfect. | S. Aud- iv-i , <i>I have</i> Aud- iv-isti , <i>thou hast</i> Aud- iv-it , <i>he has</i> P. Aud- iv-īmus , <i>we have</i> Aud- iv-istis , <i>you have</i> Aud- iv-ērunt (ēre), <i>they have</i> | Aud- iv-erim , <i>I may have</i> Aud- iv-eris , <i>thou mayst have</i> Aud- iv-erit , <i>he may have</i> Aud- iv-erīmus , <i>we may have</i> Aud- iv-eritis , <i>you may have</i> Aud- iv-erint , <i>they may have</i> |
| Pluperfect. | S. Aud- iv-eram , <i>I had</i> Aud- iv-eras , <i>thou hadst</i> Aud- iv-erat , <i>he had</i> P. Aud- iv-ērāmus , <i>we had</i> Aud- iv-eratis , <i>you had</i> Aud- iv-erant , <i>they had</i> | Aud- iv-issem , <i>I might or shd.</i> Aud- iv-isses , <i>thou wouldst</i> Aud- iv-isset , <i>he would</i> Aud- iv-issemus , <i>we should</i> Aud- iv-issetis , <i>you would</i> Aud- iv-issent , <i>they would</i> |
| Future Perfect. | S. Aud- iv-ero , <i>I shall</i> Aud- iv-eris , <i>thou wilt</i> Aud- iv-erit , <i>he will</i> P. Aud- iv-erīmus , <i>we shall</i> Aud- iv-eritis , <i>you will</i> Aud- iv-erint , <i>they will</i> | |

—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Audīvi, Audītum, Audīre.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--|----------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|-------------------------------|--|
| <p>Aud-i, <i>hear thou.</i></p> <p>Aud-īte, <i>hear ye.</i></p> | <p>Aud-īre, <i>to hear.</i></p> | <p>Aud-iens, } Aud-iens, } <i>hearing.</i> Aud-iens, }</p> | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>Aud-īto, <i>thou shalt hear.</i></p> <p>Aud-īto, <i>he shall hear.</i></p> <p>Aud-ītōte, <i>ye shall hear.</i></p> <p>Aud-iunto, <i>they shall hear.</i></p> | <p>Audītūr-um, -am, -um, esse, <i>to be about to hear.</i></p> | <p>Audītūr-us, -a, -um, <i>about to hear.</i></p> | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <p>Audīv-isse, <i>to have heard.</i></p> | <p>—</p> | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | <p>—</p> | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>—</p> | <table border="0"> <thead> <tr> <th>GERUND.</th> <th>SUPINES.</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Audiend-i, <i>of hearing.</i></td> <td>Audītum, <i>to hear.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Audiend-o, <i>to or for hearing.</i></td> <td>Audītu, <i>to be heard.</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Audiend-um, <i>hearing.</i></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Audiend-o, <i>by hearing.</i></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | GERUND. | SUPINES. | Audiend-i, <i>of hearing.</i> | Audītum, <i>to hear.</i> | Audiend-o, <i>to or for hearing.</i> | Audītu, <i>to be heard.</i> | Audiend-um, <i>hearing.</i> | | Audiend-o, <i>by hearing.</i> | |
| GERUND. | SUPINES. | | | | | | | | | | |
| Audiend-i, <i>of hearing.</i> | Audītum, <i>to hear.</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Audiend-o, <i>to or for hearing.</i> | Audītu, <i>to be heard.</i> | | | | | | | | | | |
| Audiend-um, <i>hearing.</i> | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Audiend-o, <i>by hearing.</i> | | | | | | | | | | | |

REGULAR VERBS—

PASSIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Audior,

| | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|-----------------|---|--|
| Present. | S. Aud-ior, <i>I am</i> Aud-iris, <i>thou art</i> Aud-itur, <i>he is</i> P. Aud-īmur, <i>we are</i> Aud-īmini, <i>ye or you are</i> Aud-iuntur, <i>they are</i> | Aud-iar, <i>I may be heard.</i> Aud-iāris, <i>thou mayst be heard.</i> Aud-iatur, <i>he may be heard.</i> Aud-iamur, <i>we may be heard.</i> Aud-iamini, <i>you may be heard.</i> Aud-iantur, <i>they may be heard.</i> |
| Imperfect. | S. Aud-īēbar, <i>I was</i> [<i>wast</i>] Aud-iebāris (-iebare), <i>thou</i> Aud-iebatur, <i>he was</i> P. Aud-iebāmur, <i>we were</i> Aud-iebāmini, <i>you were</i> Aud-iebantur, <i>they were</i> | Aud-īrer, <i>I might or should</i> Aud-irēris (-irēre), <i>thou mst.</i> Aud-iretur, <i>he might</i> Aud-iremur, <i>we might</i> Aud-iremini, <i>you might</i> Aud-irentur, <i>they might</i> |
| Future. | S. Aud-iar, <i>I shall</i> [<i>wilt</i>] Aud-iāris (-iere), <i>thou</i> Aud-ietur, <i>he will</i> P. Aud-iemur, <i>we shall</i> Aud-iemini, <i>you will</i> Aud-ientur, <i>they will</i> | — |
| Perfect. | S. Audit-us (-a, -um) sum, <i>I have</i> Audit-us es, <i>thou hast</i> Audit-us est, <i>he has</i> P. Audit-i sumus, <i>we have</i> Audit-i estis, <i>you have</i> Audit-i sunt, <i>they have</i> | Audit-us sim, <i>I may have</i> Audit-us sis, <i>thou mayst have</i> Audit-us sit, <i>he may have</i> Audit-i simus, <i>we may have</i> Audit-i sitis, <i>you may have</i> Audit-i sint, <i>they may have</i> |
| Pluperfect. | S. Audit-us eram, <i>I had</i> Audit-us eras, <i>thou hadst</i> Audit-us erat, <i>he had</i> P. Audit-i eramus, <i>we had</i> Audit-i eratis, <i>you had</i> Audit-i erant, <i>they had</i> | Audit-us essem, <i>I mt. or shd.</i> Audit-us esses, <i>thou wouldst</i> Audit-us esset, <i>he would</i> Audit-i essemus, <i>we should</i> Audit-i essetis, <i>you would</i> Audit-i essent, <i>they would</i> |
| Future Perfect. | S. Audit-us ero, <i>I shall</i> Audit-us eris, <i>thou wilt</i> Audit-us erit, <i>he will</i> P. Audit-i erimus, <i>we shall</i> Audit-i eritis, <i>you will</i> Audit-i erunt, <i>they will</i> | — |

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

VOICE.

Audītus sum, Audīri, *to be heard.*

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|---|
| Aud-Ire , <i>be thou heard.</i> | Aud-īri , <i>to be heard.</i> | — |
| Aud-Imini , <i>be ye heard.</i> | | |
| — | — | — |
| Aud-ītor , <i>thou shalt</i> Aud-itor , <i>he shall</i> Aud-īēmīni , <i>ye shall</i> Aud-iuntor , <i>they shall</i> | Audit-um iri , <i>to be about to be heard.</i> | Audiend-us , -a, -um, <i>deserving or requiring to be heard.</i> |
| } <i>be heard.</i> | | |
| — | Audit-um , -am, -um, <i>esse</i> , <i>to have been heard.</i> | Audit-us , -a, -um, <i>heard, or having been heard.</i> |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

SECTION VI.—THE FOUR

ACTIVE

| Tense. | Conj. | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|------------------|-------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Present. | 1. | Pār-o, -ās, -āt, &c. | Pār-em, -es, -et, &c. |
| | 2. | Pār-eo, -ēs, -ēt, &c. | Pār-eam, -eas, -eat, &c. |
| | 3. | Pār-io, -īs, -īt, &c. | Pār-iam, -ias, -iat, &c. |
| | 4. | Apēr-io, -īs, -īt, &c. | Apēr-iam, -ias, -iat, &c. |
| Imperfect. | 1. | Pār-ābam, -abas, -abat, &c. | Pār-ārem, -āres, -āret, &c. |
| | 2. | Pār-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat, &c. | Pār-ērem, -ēres, -ēret, &c. |
| | 3. | Pār-iēbam, -iēbas, -iēbat, &c. | Pār-ērem, -ēres, -ēret, &c. |
| | 4. | Apēr-iēbam, -iēbas, -iēbat, &c. | Apēr-īrem, -īres, -īret, &c. |
| Future. | 1. | Pār-ābo, -abis, -abit, &c. | Parātūrus sim, sis, &c. |
| | 2. | Pār-ēbo, -ebis, -ebit, &c. | Parītūrus sim, sis, &c. |
| | 3. | Pār-īam, -ies, -iet, &c. | Partūrus sim, sis, &c. |
| | 4. | Apēr-īam, -ies, -iet, &c. | Apertūrus sim, sis, &c. |
| Perfect. | 1. | Pārāv-i, -isti, -it, &c. | Pārāv-ērim, -eris, -erit, &c. |
| | 2. | Pārū-i, -isti, -it, &c. | Pārū-ērim, -eris, -erit, &c. |
| | 3. | Pēpēr-i, -isti, -it, &c. | Pēpēr-ērim, -eris, -erit, &c. |
| | 4. | Apēru-i, -isti, -it, &c. | Apērū-ērim, -eris, -erit, &c. |
| Pluperfect. | 1. | Pārāv-eram, -eras, &c. | Pārāv-issem, -isses, &c. |
| | 2. | Pārū-eram, -eras, &c. | Pārū-issem, -isses, &c. |
| | 3. | Pēpēr-eram, -eras, &c. | Pēpēr-issem, -isses, &c. |
| | 4. | Apēru-eram, -eras, &c. | Apēru-issem, -isses, &c. |
| Fut. Perfect. | 1. | Pārāv-ero, -eris, &c. | |
| | 2. | Pārū-ero, -eris, &c. | |
| | 3. | Pēpēr-ero, -eris, &c. | |
| | 4. | Apēru-ero, -eris, &c. | |
| SUPINES. | | | |
| 1. Pārāt-um, -u. | | | |
| 2. Pārīt-um, -u. | | | |
| 3. Part-um, -u. | | | |
| 4. Apert-um -u. | | | |

CONJUGATIONS AT ONE VIEW.

VOICE.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|---|---|
| Pār-ā, -āte. Pār-ē, -ēte. Pār-č, -īte. Apēr-ī, -īte. | Pār-āre. Pār-ēre. Pār-ēre. Apēr-īre. | Pār-ans. Pār-ens. Pār-iens. Apēr-iens. |
| — | — | — |
| Pār-āto, -ātote, -anto. Pār-ēto, -ētote, -ento. Pār-īto, -ītote, -iunto. Apēr-īto, -ītote, -iunto. | Pārātūrum esse. Pārītūrum esse. Partūrum esse. Apertūrum esse. | Pārāt-ūrus. Pārīt-ūrus. Part-ūrus. Apert-ūrus. |
| — | Pārāv-isse. Pārū-isse. Pēpēr-isse. Apērū-isse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

GERUNDS.

1. Parand-i, -o, -um.
2. Parend-i, -o, -um.
3. Pariend-i, -o, -um.
4. Aperiend-i, -o, -um.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

PASSIVE

| Tense. | Conj. | INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---------------|-------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Present. | 1. | Pār-or, -āris, -ātur, &c. | Pār-er, -ēris, -ētur, &c. |
| | 2. | Pār-eor,* -ēris, -ētur, &c. | Pār-ear, -eāris, eātur, &c. |
| | 3. | Pār-ior, -ēris, -itur, &c. | Pār-iar, -iāris, -iātur, &c. |
| | 4. | Apēr-ior, -iris, -itur, &c. | Apēr-iar, -iāris, -iātur, &c. |
| Imperfect. | 1. | Pār-ābar, -abaris, &c. | Pār-ārer, -āreris, &c. |
| | 2. | Pār-ēbar, -ebaris, &c. | Pār-ērer, -ēreris, &c. |
| | 3. | Pār-iēbar, -iebaris, &c. | Pār-ērer, -ēreris, &c. |
| | 4. | Apēr-iēbar, -iebaris, &c. | Apēr-īrer, -īreris, &c. |
| Future. | 1. | Par-ābor, ābēris, &c. | — |
| | 2. | Par-ēbor, -ēbēris, &c. | — |
| | 3. | Par-iar, iēris, &c. | — |
| | 4. | Aper-iar, iēris, &c. | — |
| Perfect. | 1. | Pārātus sum, es, &c. | Pārātus sim, sis, &c. |
| | 2. | Pārītus sum, es, &c. | Pārītus sim, sis, &c. |
| | 3. | Partus sum, es, &c. | Partus sim, sis, &c. |
| | 4. | Apertus sum, es, &c. | Apertus sim, sis, &c. |
| Pluperfect. | 1. | Pārātus eram, eras, &c. | Pārātus essem, &c. |
| | 2. | Pārītus eram, eras, &c. | Pārītus essem, &c. |
| | 3. | Partus eram, eras, &c. | Partus essem, &c. |
| | 4. | Apertus eram, eras, &c. | Apertus essem, &c. |
| Fut. Perfect. | 1. | Pārātus ero, eris, &c. | — |
| | 2. | Pārītus ero, eris, &c. | — |
| | 3. | Partus ero, eris, &c. | — |
| | 4. | Apertus ero, eris, &c. | — |

* The passive voice of *pareo* is used only

AT ONE VIEW.

VOICE.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|---|---|
| Par-āre, -āmini. Pār-ēre, -ēmini. Pār-ēre, -īmini. Apēr-īre, -īmini. | Pār-āri. Pār-ēri. Pār-ī. Apēr-īrī. | — |
| — | — | — |
| Pār-ātor, -abimini, &c. Pār-ētor, -ēlīmīni, &c. Pār-ītor, -īēmīni, &c. Apēr-ītor, -īēmīni, &c. | Pārātum iri. Pārītum iri. Partum iri. Apertum iri. | Pārāndus. Pārendus. Pārīendus. Apērīendus. |
| — | Pārātum esse. Pārītum esse. Partum esse. Apertum esse. | Pārātus. Pārītus. Partus. Apertus. |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

In the impersonal forms. See p. 57, 4.

CHAPTER IX.—

Deponent Verbs are those which have the inflexions of the Passive Voice known, as in other Regular Verbs, by

SECTION I.—FIRST CONJUGATION—Hortor, /

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|--|
| <i>PRES.</i> —(I admonish, &c.) S. Hort-or, -āris, &c. | (I may admonish, &c.) Hort-er, -ēris, &c. |
| <i>IMPERF.</i> — S. Hort-ābar, &c. | Hort-ārer, &c. |
| <i>FUT.</i> — S. Hort-ābor, -abēris, &c. | Hortātūr-us sim, &c. |
| <i>PERF.</i> — S. Hortāt-us sum, &c. | Hortāt-us sim, &c. |
| <i>PLUPERF.</i> — S. Hortāt-us eram, &c. | Hortāt-us essem, &c. |
| <i>FUT. PERF.</i> — S. Hortāt-us ero, &c. | — |

SUPINES—Hortātum, &c.

SECTION II.—SECOND CONJUGATION—Vĕreor,

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|---|
| <i>PRES.</i> —(I fear, &c.) S. Vĕr-eor, -ēris, &c. | (I may fear, &c.) Ver-ear, -ēāris, &c. |
| <i>IMPERF.</i> — S. Ver-ēbar, &c. | Ver-ērer, &c. |
| <i>FUT.</i> — S. Ver-ēbor, &c. | Verīt-urus sim, &c. |
| <i>PERF.</i> — S. Verīt-us sum, &c. | Verīt-us sim, &c. |
| <i>PLUPERF.</i> — S. Verīt-us eram, &c. | Verīt-us essem, &c. |
| <i>FUT. PERF.</i> — S. Verīt-us ero, &c. | — |

SUPINES—Veritum, &c.

DEPONENT VERBS.

but the meaning of the Active. The conjugation to which each belongs is the favourite vowel. (See p. 53, 15, *sqq.*)

admonish. PRINCIPAL PARTS, Hortor, Hortatus sum, Hortari.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|---|--|
| (Admonish thou, &c.) Hort-āre, -āmini. | (To admonish.) Hort-āri. | (Admonishing.) Hort-ans. |
| — | — | — |
| Hort-ātor, &c. | Hortatur-um Hortatur-am } esse. Hortatur-um } | (About to admonish.) Hortāt-ūrus, &c. (Deserving to be admon- ished.) Hortand-us, -a, -um. |
| — | Hortat-um esse. | (Having admonished.) Hortat-us, -a, -um. |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

GERUND—Hortand-i, &c.

I fear. PRINCIPAL PARTS, Vĕreor, Vĕrĭtus sum, Vĕrĕri.

| (Fear thou, &c.) Ver-ĕre, -ĕmini. | (To fear.) Ver-ĕri. | (Fearing.) Ver-ens. |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|---|
| — | — | — |
| Ver-ĕtor, &c. | Verit-urum esse, &c. | Verĭt-ūrus (<i>act.</i>), and Ver-endus (<i>pass.</i>) |
| — | Verĭt-um esse. | Verĭt-us, -a, -um. |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

GERUND—Verend-i, &c.

DEPONENT

SECTION III.—THIRD CONJUGATION—Lŏqu-or,

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|---|
| <i>PRES.</i> —(I speak, &c.) S. Lŏqu-or, -ĕris, -ĭtur, &c. | (I may speak, &c.) Lŏqu-ar, -āris, &c. |
| <i>IMPERF.</i> — S. Lŏqu-ĕbar, &c. | Loqu-ĕrer, &c. |
| <i>FUT.</i> — S. Lŏqu-ar, -ĕris, &c. | Locŭtur-us sim, &c. |
| <i>PERF.</i> — S. Lŏcŭt-us sum, &c. | Locut-us sim, &c. |
| <i>PLUPERF.</i> — S. Lŏcŭt-us ĕram, &c. | Locut-us essem, &c. |
| <i>FUT. PERF.</i> — S. Lŏcŭt-us ero, &c. | — |

SUPINE—Locŭt-um, &c.

SECTION IV.—FOURTH CONJUGATION—Part-ior,

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>PRES.</i> —(I divide, &c.) S. Part-ior, -ĭris, -ĭtur, &c. | (I may divide, &c.) Part-iar, -iāris, &c. |
| <i>IMPERF.</i> — S. Part-iĕbar, &c. | Part-irer, &c. |
| <i>FUT.</i> — S. Part-iar, iĕris, &c. | Partitŭr-us sim, &c. |
| <i>PERF.</i> — S. Partit-us sum, &c. | Partit-us sim, &c. |
| <i>PLUPERF.</i> — S. Partit-us eram, &c. | Partit-us essem, &c. |
| <i>FUT. PERF.</i> — S. Partit-us ero, &c. | — |

SUPINE—Partit-um, &c.

VERBS.

I speak. PRINCIPAL PARTS—Lōquor, Lōcūtus sum, Lōqui.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| (Speak thou, &c.) Lōqu-ēre, -ītor. | (To speak, &c.) Lōqu-i. | (Speaking, &c.) Lōqu-ens, &c. |
| — | — | — |
| Loqu-ītor, &c. | Locūtūr-um esse, &c. | Locūt-ūrus, -ura, &c. Loquend-us, -a, -um, &c. (Requiring to be spoken.) |
| — | Locūt-um esse, &c. | (Having spoken, &c.) Lōcūt-us, -a, -um. |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

GERUND—Loquend-i, &c.

I divide. PRINCIPAL PARTS—Partior, Partītus sum, Partīri.

| (Divide thou, &c.) Part-īre, -īmīni, &c. | (To divide, &c.) Part-īri. | (Dividing, &c.) Part-iens, &c. |
|---|-------------------------------|---|
| — | — | — |
| Part-ītor, &c. | Partītūr-um esse, &c. | Partīt-ūrus, -ura, &c. Partiend-us, -a, -um, &c. |
| — | Partīt-um esse. | Partīt-us, -a, -um, &c. |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

GERUND—Partiend-i, &c.

CHAP. X., SECT. I.—

SUM is very irregular in those Tenses which are formed from the stem of the ends, not in *-bam*, but in *-ram*, like a pluperfect; its future, not in *-bo sum* is for *esum*, *sim* for *esim*, *sunt* for *esunt*, &c. In Latin *s* is often Verb, because, being joined with perfect participles, it *assists* in cora- (from *substantia*, essence, or being), because it denotes existence.

SUM, *I am.* PRINCIPAL

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|--|--|
| <p><i>PRES.</i>—(I am, &c.) S. Sum, Ęs, Ęst. P. Sūmus, Estis, Sunt.</p> | <p>(I may be, &c.) Sim, Sis, Sīt. Sīmus, Sītis, Sint.</p> |
| <p><i>IMPERF.</i>—(I was, &c.) S. Ęram, Eras, Erat. P. Erāmus, Erātis, Erant.</p> | <p>(I might or should be, &c.) - Essem, Essēs, Essēt. Essēmus, † Essētis, Essent.</p> |
| <p>(<i>FUT.</i>—(I shall or will be, &c.) S. Ęro, Eris, Erit. P. Erīmus, Erītis, Erunt.</p> | <p>(I may be about to be, &c.) Futurus sim, Futurus sīs, Futurus sīt. Futuri sīmus, Futuri sītis, Futuri sint.</p> |
| <p><i>PERF.</i>—(I have been, &c.) S. Fūi, Fuisti, Fuit. P. Fūimus, Fuistis, Fuērunt, or Fuēre.</p> | <p>(I may have been, &c.) Fu-erim, -eris, -erit. Fu-erīmus, -erītis, -erint.</p> |
| <p><i>PLUPERF.</i>—(I had been, &c.) S. Fū-eram, -eras, -erat. P. Fū-erāmus, -eratis, -erant.</p> | <p>(I might or should have been, &c.) Fu-issem, -isses, -isset. Fu-issemus, -issētis, -issent.</p> |
| <p><i>FUT. PERF.</i>—(I shall have been, &c.) S. Fu-ero, -eris, -erit, P. Fu-erīmus, -erītis, -erint.</p> | <p>—</p> |

* Like *sum* are declined its compounds, *absum*, "I am away from;" *adsum*, "I am at" in those parts in which the simple verb begins with an *e*; as, *pro-d-es*, *pro-d-eram*.

† *Forem*, *fores*, *foret*, &c., are often used instead of *essem*, &c.

‡ The perfect *fui* and its derived tenses are formed from an old verb, *fuo* (φύω), In very old writers the perfect and derived tenses are often written with a *v*; as, *fui*,

¶ In early writers the present subjunctive is often written *sīem*, *sīs*, *siet*, *sient*, &c., simple verb has no present participle; but *escens*, or *sens*, which would be the proper

IRREGULAR VERBS.

first principal part; *i.e.*, the present indicative. The imperfect indicative or *-am*, but in *-ro*, like a future perfect. The stem is properly *es-*, so that changed into *r*, so that *eram* is for *esam*. *Sum* is called an *Auxiliary* pleting the tenses of other verbs. It is also called a Substantive Verb

PARTS—Sum, Fui, Esse.*

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|---|--|---|
| (Be thou, &c.) Ĕs. Este. | (To be.) Esse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| (Thou shalt be, &c.) Esto, Esto. Estōte, Sunto. | (To be about to be.) Futūr-um } — -am } esse †. — -um } | (About to be.) Futūr-us, -i. — -a, -ae. — -um, -i, &c. |
| — | (To have been.) Fuisse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

am present; "desum, "I am wanting," &c. But *prosum*, "I am nseful to," inserts *pro-d-ero*, &c.

† *Fore* is often used instead of *futurum esse*.

whose stem appears in *fū-tērus*, and in the antique subjunctive present, *fu-am*, *-as*, &c. *fuveram*, &c.

for *sim*, *sis*, &c.; so also *escit* (*i.e.*, *esit*) for *erit*, and *escunt* (*i.e.*, *csunt*) for *erunt*. The form, appears in the compounds *prae-sens*, *ab-sens*, &c.

SECTION II.—

Possum is compounded of *pot-*, the stem of the adjective *potis*, “able,” and is retained; but when they begin with *s*, the *t* is assimilated to *s*: as, perfect and derived tenses, the *f* of *fui* is omitted; as, *pot-ui* for used as an adjective. *Posse* is for *pot-esse*.

POSSUM, *I am able.* PRINCIPAL

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|--|
| <p><i>PRES.</i>—(I am able, &c.) S. <i>Possum</i>,* <i>Pōtēs</i>, <i>Potest</i>. P. <i>Possūmus</i>, <i>Potestis</i>, <i>Possunt</i>.</p> | <p>(I may be able, &c.) <i>Possim</i>, <i>Possīs</i>, <i>Possit</i>. <i>Possīmus</i>, <i>Possītis</i>, <i>Possint</i>.</p> |
| <p><i>IMPERF.</i>—(I was able, &c.) S. <i>Pōt-eram</i>, -eras, -erat. P. <i>Pōt-erāmus</i>, -erātis, -erant.</p> | <p>(I might or should be able, &c.) <i>Poss-em</i>, -es, -et. <i>Poss-ēmus</i>, -etis, -ent.</p> |
| <p><i>FUT.</i>—(I shall be able, &c.) S. <i>Pōt-ero</i>, -eris, -erit. P. <i>Pot-erīmus</i>, -erītis, -erunt.</p> | <p>—</p> |
| <p><i>PERF.</i>—(I have been able, &c.) S. <i>Potu-i</i>, -isti, -it. P. <i>Potu-imus</i>, -istis, -ērunt, or -ēre.</p> | <p>(I may have been able, &c.) <i>Potu-erim</i>, -eris, -erit. <i>Potu-erīmus</i>, -erītis, -erint.</p> |
| <p><i>PLUPERF.</i>—(I had been able, &c.) S. <i>Potu-eram</i>, -eras, -erat. P. <i>Potu-eramus</i>, -eratis, -erant.</p> | <p>(I might have been able, &c.) <i>Potu-issēm</i>, -issēs, -isset. <i>Potu-issēmus</i>, -issetis, -issent.</p> |
| <p><i>FUT. PERF.</i>—(I shall have been able, &c.) S. <i>Potu-ēro</i>, -eris, -erit. P. <i>Potu-erīmus</i>, -erītis, -erint.</p> | <p>—</p> |

* In early Latin writers, and in authors who imitate the antique style, the forms for *possumus*, &c., are found uncontracted, the adjectival part *potis* remaining *possis*; and the passive forms, *potestur* (for *potest*), *poterātur* (for *poterat*), *possitur* for *potest*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

sum, "I am." Whenever the parts of *sum* begin with an *e*, the *t* of *pot-pot-es*, *pot-cram*; but *possum* for *pot-sum*, *possim* for *pot-sim*. In the *pot-fui*. The imperative is wanting, and the present participle, *potens*, is

PARTS—Possum, Potüi, Posse.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|-------------|
| — | (To be able.) Posse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | (To have been able.) Pot-uisse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

potis sum for *possum*, *potis est* for *potest*, *potis sunt* or *potessunt* for *possunt*, *potis sumus* unchanged. So also *potesse* for *posse*, *potesset* for *posset*, *possim*, *possios*, for *possim*, (for *possit*), when used before passive infinitives. *Potis* and *pote* were often used

SECTION III—

PROSUM. *I am useful to. I do good to.*

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|--|
| <p>PRESENT — I am useful to, &c.)</p> <p>S. Pro-sum. Pro-cta. Pro-ci-ent.</p> <p>P. Pro-sumus. Pro-ctus. Pro-cient.</p> | <p>(I may be useful to, &c.)</p> <p>Pro-sum. -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> |
| <p>IMPERFECT — I was useful to, &c.)</p> <p>S. Pro-sum * -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>P. Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> | <p>(I might or should be useful to, &c.)</p> <p>Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> |
| <p>FUTURE — I shall be useful to, &c.)</p> <p>S. Pro-sum. -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>P. Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> | <p>(I may be about to be useful to, &c.)</p> <p>Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> |
| <p>PERFECT — I have been useful to, &c.)</p> <p>S. Pro-sum. -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>P. Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient. or -cti.</p> | <p>(I may have been useful to, &c.)</p> <p>Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> |
| <p>PLUPERFECT — I had been useful to, &c.)</p> <p>S. Pro-sum. -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>P. Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> | <p>(I might have been useful to, &c.)</p> <p>Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> |
| <p>FUTURE PERFECT — I shall have been useful to, &c.)</p> <p>S. Pro-sum. -ctis. -cient.</p> <p>P. Pro-sumus. -ctis. -cient.</p> | <p>—</p> |

* See p. 88, note.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Prosum, Profui, Prodesse.

| IMPERATIVE | INFINITIVE | PARTICIPLE |
|---|---|------------|
| — | (To be useful to) Pro-fesse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| Pro-fesse, Pro-fesse. Pro-fesse, Pro-fuisse. | (To be about to be useful to) Pro-fatur-am, esse, or Pro-fatur-am } Pro- Pro-fatur-am } fesse. | — |
| — | (To have been useful to) Pro-fuisse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

SECTION IV.—

EO, *I go*. PRINCIPAL.

Eo belongs to the Fourth Conjugation. Its stem, *i-*, becomes *e-* before indicative *eo* for *io*; third plural present *eunt* for *iunt*. The imperfect

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|---|
| <p><i>PRES.</i>—(I go, or am going, &c.) S. <i>Ēo, Is, It.</i> P. <i>Imus, Itis, Ĕunt.</i></p> | <p>(I may go, &c.) <i>Ĕam, Eās, Eāt.</i> <i>Eāmus, Eātis, Eant.</i></p> |
| <p><i>IMPERF.</i>—(I was going, &c.) S. <i>Ibam, Ibas, Ibat.</i> P. <i>Ibamus, Ibatis, Ibant.</i></p> | <p>(I might, &c., go, &c.) <i>Irem, Ires, Iret.</i> <i>Irēmus, Irētis, Irent.</i></p> |
| <p><i>FUT.</i>—(I shall or will go, &c.) S. <i>Ibo, Ibis, Ibit.</i> P. <i>Ibīmus, Ibītis, Ibunt.</i></p> | <p>(I may be about to go, &c.) <i>Īturus sim, Iturus sis, &c.</i></p> |
| <p><i>PERF.</i>—(I have gone, &c.) S. <i>Īv-i, -isti, -it.</i> P. <i>Iv-īmus, -istis, -erunt or -ere.</i></p> | <p>(I may have gone, &c.) <i>Iv-erim, -eris, -erit.</i> <i>Iv-erīmus, -erītis, -erint.</i></p> |
| <p><i>PLUPERF.</i>—(I had gone, &c.) S. <i>Iv-eram, -eras, -erat.</i> P. <i>Iv-eramus, -eratis, -erant.</i></p> | <p>(I might have gone, &c.) <i>Iv-issem, -isses, -isset.</i> <i>Iv-issemus, issetis, -issent.</i></p> |
| <p><i>FUT. PERF.</i>—(I shall have gone, &c.) S. <i>Iv-ero, -eris, -erit.</i> P. <i>Iv-erīmus, -erītis, -erint.</i></p> | <p>—</p> |

SUPINE—*Ītum, Itu.*

Note (1.) That *eo* has a passive voice only in the third singular; as, *itur*, "to go away;" *ineo*, "to enter;" *redeo*, "to return," &c.) are conjugated are usually contracted into *ii, iisti (isti)*. (3.) That some of the compounds (4.) That some of the compounds of *eo* are transitive, and therefore have the compound *vēneo*, "I am sold" (which has a passive signification, and which the imperative, the participles, and the gerund. Its imperfect indicative regular verb of the Fourth Conjugation; as, *ambiunt, ambiebam* or *ambin*.
N.B.—*Quco*, "I am able," and *nequeo*, "I am unable," are conjugated like seldom occur. They are occasionally used in the passive voice, when are used for *nequis* and *nequit*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PARTS—*Ēo*, *Īvi*, *Ītum*, *Īre*.

the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*: thus, present subjunctive *eam* for *iam*; present is *iĕam*, and not *i-e-bam*; and the future ends in *-bo*, and not in *-am*.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|---|---|
| (Go thou, &c.) Ī. Īte. | (To go, &c.) Īre. | Iens, Euntis. Iens, Euntis. Iens, Euntis. |
| — | — | — |
| (Thou shalt go, &c.) Ito, Ito. Itote, Eunto. | (To be about to go.) Itur-um } Itur-am } <i>esse.</i> Itur-um } | (About to go.) Ītūr-us, -i. Itur-a, -ae. Itur-um, -i. |
| — | (To have gone, &c.) Iv-isse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

GERUND—*Eundum*, *Eundi*, &c.

“it is gone;” *ibatur*, “it was gone,” &c. (2.) That the compounds of *eo* (*abco*, in the same way as the simple verb: but that *ivi*, *ivisti*, &c., in the perfect, occasionally take *-am* instead of *-bo* in the future; as, *redeam*, *redies*, &c. a complete passive voice; as, *adco*, *ineo*, *practereo*, *transco*, &c. (5.) That is contracted for *venum eo*, is conjugated like the simple verb, but wants is often made *veniēbam*, for *veniĕbam*. (6.) That the compound *ambio* is a *bam*, *ambiam*, &c.

eo; but they want the imperative and the gerund. Their participles very governing the infinitive passive of another verb. *Non quis* and *non quit*

SECTION V.—

Fero is of the Third Conjugation, but is irregular in the Perfect and thus, *fers* for *fer-i-s*, *fert* for *fer-i-t*, *ferre* for *fer-e-re*,

ACTIVE

FERO, *I bring or bear.* PRINCIPAL

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|--|---|
| <p><i>PRES.</i>—(I bear, &c.) S. Fēro, Fers, Fert. P. Fēr-īmus, Fer-tis, Fer-unt.</p> | <p>(I may bear, &c.) Fer-am, -as, -at. Fer-āmus, -ātis, -ānt.</p> |
| <p><i>IMPERF.</i>—(I was bearing, &c.) S. Fēr-ēbam, -ebas, -ebat. P. Fēr-ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.</p> | <p>(I might bear, &c.) Fer-rem, -res, -ret. Fer-rēmus, -rētis, -rent.</p> |
| <p><i>FUT.</i>—(I shall or will bear, &c.) S. Fer-am, -ēs, -et. P. Fer-ēmus, -ētis, -ent.</p> | <p>(I may be about to bear, &c.) Lāturus sim, sīs, &c.</p> |
| <p><i>PERF.</i>—(I have borne, &c.) S. Tūl-i, -istī, -it. P. Tūl-īmus, -istis, -erunt, or -ere.</p> | <p>(I may have borne, &c.) Tūl-ērim, -eris, -erit. Tūl-erīmus, -erītis, -erint.</p> |
| <p><i>PLUPERF.</i>—(I had borne, &c.) S. Tūl-ēram, -eras, -erat. P. Tūl-eramus, -eratis, -erant.</p> | <p>(I might have borne, &c.) Tul-issem, -isses, -isset. Tul-issemus, -issetis, -issent.</p> |
| <p><i>FUT. PERF.</i>—(I shall have borne, &c.) S. Tul-ero, -eris, -erit. P. Tul-erīmus, -erītis, -erint.</p> | <p>—</p> |

SUPINES—Lat-um, Lat-u.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Supine and derived tenses. In some parts it omits the connecting vowel: *ferris* (second singular present passive) for *fer-e-ris*.

VOICE.

PARTS—Fĕro, Tŭli, Lātum, Ferre.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|--|
| (Bear thou, &c.) Fer. Fer-te. | (To bear.) Fer-re. | (Bearing.) Fer-ens, -entis. Fer-ens, -entis. Fer-ens, -entis, &c. |
| — | — | — |
| (Thou shalt bear.) Fer-to, Fer-to. Fer-tote, Fer-unto. | (To be about to bear.) Latŭr-um } Latur-am } esse. Latur-um } | (About to bear) Latŭr-us, -i. Latur-a, -ae. Latur-um, -i. |
| — | (To have borne.) Tŭl-isse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

GERUND—Ferend-i, -o, &c.

IRREGULAR

PASSIVE

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Fēror, Lātus

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|--|---|
| <p><i>PRES.</i>—(I am borne, &c.) S. Fēr-or, Fer-ris, Fer-tur. P. Fer-īmur, -īmīni, -untur.</p> | <p>(I may be borne, &c.) Fer-ār, -āris (-āre), -ātur. Fer-āmur, -āmīni, -antur.</p> |
| <p><i>IMPERF.</i>—(I was borne, &c.) S. Fer-ēbar, -ēbāris, &c.</p> | <p>(I might be borne, &c.) Fer-rer, -reris, -retur, &c.</p> |
| <p><i>FUT.</i>—(I shall be borne, &c.) S. Fer-ar, -ēris, -ētur. P. Fer-ēmur, -ēmīni, -entur.</p> | <p>—</p> |
| <p><i>PERF.</i>—(I have been borne, &c.) S. Lātus sum, es, &c.</p> | <p>(I may have been borne, &c.) Latus sim, sis, &c.</p> |
| <p><i>PLUPERF.</i>—(I had been borne, &c.) S. Latus eram, eras, &c.</p> | <p>(I might have been borne, &c.) Latus essem, esses &c.</p> |
| <p><i>FUT. PERF.</i>—(I shall have been borne, &c.) S. Latus ero, eris, &c.</p> | <p>—</p> |

In the same way are conjugated

| | |
|-----------------------|---------|
| Affero (ad fero) | Attuli |
| Effero (e or ex fero) | Extuli |
| Perfero (per fero) | Pertuli |

VERBS.**VOICE.**sum, Ferri, *to be borne.*

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|---|--|
| (Be thou borne.) Fer-re. Fer-imini. | (To be borne.) Fer-ri. | — |
| — | — | — |
| (Thou shalt be borne.) Fer-tor, Fer-tor. Fer-ēmini, Fer-untor. | (To be about to be borne.) Lat-um iri. | (Requiring to be borne.) Ferend-us, -i. Ferend-a, -ae. Ferend-um, -i, &c. |
| — | (To have been borne.) Lat-um } Lat-am } esse. Lat-um } | (Borne.) Lat-us, -i. Lat-a, -ae. Lat-um, -i, &c. |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

the compounds of *Fero*:—

| | | |
|----------|--|-------------------|
| Allatum | | Afferre. |
| Elatum | | Efferre. |
| Perlatum | | Perferre, &c. &c. |

SECTION VI.—

VOLO, *I am willing.* PRINCIPAL

This verb is irregular in the present indicative and present infinitive, and *velere*, which was syncopated into *vel're*; and this, by assimilation *vult* and *vultis*, older writers use *volt* and *voltis*.

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|--|
| <i>PRES.</i> —(I am willing, &c.) S. Vōlo, Vis, Vult. P. Vōlūmus, Vultis, Vōlunt. | (I may be willing, &c.) Vēl-im, -is, -īt. Vēl-īmus, -itis, -int. |
| <i>IMPERF.</i> —(I was willing, &c.) S. Vol-ēbam, -ebas, &c. | (I might be willing, &c.) Vel-lem, -les, -let, &c. |
| <i>FUT.</i> —(I shall be willing, &c.) S. Vōl-am, -ēs, -et, &c. | — |
| <i>PERF.</i> —(I have been willing, &c.) S. Vōlū-i, -isti, -it, &c. | (I may have been willing, &c.) Volu-erim, -eris, &c. |
| <i>PLUPERF.</i> —(I had been willing, &c.) S. Vōlu-eram, -eras, &c. | (I might have been willing, &c.) Volu-issem, -isses, &c. |
| <i>FUT. PERF.</i> —(I shall have been willing, &c.) S. Vōlu-ero, -eris, &c. | — |

SECTION VII.—

NOLO, *I am unwilling.* PRINCIPAL

Nōlo is composed of *ne* or *non*, “not,” and

| | |
|---|--|
| <i>PRES.</i> —(I am unwilling, &c.) S. Nōlo, Non-vis, Non-vult. P. Nōlumus, Non-vultis, Nōlunt. | (I may be unwilling, &c.) Nōl-im, -is, -īt. Nōl-īmus, -itis, -int. |
| <i>IMPERF.</i> —(I was unwilling, &c.) S. Nōl-ēbam, -ēbas, -ēbat, &c. | (I might be unwilling, &c.) Nōl-lem, -les, -let, &c. |
| <i>FUT.</i> —(I shall be unwilling, &c.) S. Nōl-am, -es, -et. | — |

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PARTS—Völo, Völui, Velle.

the tenses derived from them. The full form of the infinitive would be of the liquids *l* and *r*, became *velle*. So *vellem* is for *velërem*. Instead of

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|-------------|--|--|
| — | (To be willing.) Velle. | (Willing.) Volens. Volentis, &c. |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | (To have been willing.) Volu-isse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PARTS—Nölo, Nölui, Nölle.

völo; the first syllable is therefore long.

| | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|
| (Be thou unwilling) Nöli. Nölite. | (To be unwilling.) Nölle. | (Unwilling.) Nolens. Nolentis, &c. |
| — | — | — |
| (Thou shalt be unwilling.) Nölito, Nolito. Nölitote, Nolunto. | — | — |

IRREGULAR

NOLO, *I am*

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|--|---|
| <i>PERF.</i> —(I have been unwilling, &c.) S. Nōlū-i, -isti, -it, &c. | (I may have been unwilling, &c.) Nōlū-erim, -eris, &c. |
| <i>PLUPERF.</i> —(I had been unwilling, &c.) S. Nōlū-eram, -eras, &c. | (I might have been unwilling, &c.) Nolu-issem, -isses, &c. |
| <i>FUT. PERF.</i> —(I shall have been unwilling, &c.) S. Nōlu-ero, -eris, &c. | --- |

SECTION VIII.—

MALO, *I am more willing.*

Malo is composed of *magis* or *mage*, “more,”

| | |
|--|---|
| <i>PRES.</i> —(I am more willing, &c.) S. Mālo, Māvīs, Māvult. P. Mālūmus, Mavultis, Mālunt. | (I may be more willing, &c.) Māl-im, -is, -it. Māl-īmus, -ītis, -int. |
| <i>IMPERF.</i> —(I was more willing, &c.) S. Māl-ēbam, -ēbas, &c. | (I might be more willing, &c.) Mal-lem, -les, -let, &c. |
| <i>FUT.</i> —(I shall be more willing, &c.) S. Māl-am, -ēs, ēt, &c. | --- |
| <i>PERF.</i> —(I have been more willing, &c.) S. Mālu-i, -isti, -it, &c. | (I may have been more willing, &c.) Mālū-erim, -eris, &c. |
| <i>PLUPERF.</i> —(I had been more willing, &c.) S. Malu-eram, -eras, &c. | (I might have been more willing, &c.) Mālu-issem, -isses, &c. |
| <i>FUT. PERF.</i> —(I shall have been more willing, &c.) S. Malu-ero, -eris, &c. | --- |

VERBS.

unwilling—(continued.)

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|-------------|--|-------------|
| — | (To have been unwilling.) Nôluisse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS—Mālo, Mālui, Malle.

and *volo*, and has the first syllable long.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| — | (To be more willing.) Malle. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | (To have been more willing.) Mālu-isse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

SECTION IX.—

FIO, *I am made*, or *I become*. PRINCIPAL

Fio serves as the passive voice of *facio*, I make. It is of the Fourth *fiēbam, fiām, &c.* But it is short in the third singular present *as, fierem, fieri, &c.*

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|--|---|
| <p><i>PRES.</i>—(I become, &c.) S. Fio, Fis, Fīt. P. Fī-mus, Fī-tis, Fī-unt.</p> | <p>(I may become, &c.) Fī-am, -as, -at. Fī-āmus, -atis, -ant.</p> |
| <p><i>IMPERF.</i>—(I became, &c.) S. Fī-ēbam, -ebas, &c.</p> | <p>(I might become, &c.) Fī-ērem, -eres, &c.</p> |
| <p><i>FUT.</i>—(I shall become, &c.) S. Fī-am, -ēs, -ēt, &c.</p> | <p>—</p> |
| <p><i>PERF.</i>—(I have become, &c.) S. Factus sum, Factus ēs, &c.</p> | <p>(I may have become, &c.) Factus sim, Factus sis, &c.</p> |
| <p><i>PLUPERF.</i>—(I had become, &c.) S. Factus eram, Factus eras, &c.</p> | <p>(I might have become, &c.) Factus essem, Factus esses, &c.</p> |
| <p><i>FUT. PERF.</i>—(I shall have become, &c.) S. Factus ero, Factus eris, &c.</p> | <p>—</p> |

IRREGULAR VERBS.

PARTS—Fio, Factus sum, Fieri.

Conjugation. The vowel *i* in *fio* is long even before another vowel; as, indicative, *fit*, and in those parts of the verb which contain the letter *r*;

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--------------------------------|--|--|
| (Become thou.) Fi. Fite. | (To become.) Fieri. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | (To be about to become.) Factum iri. | (Deserving, or requiring, to be made or to become.) Faciend-us, -i. Faciend-a, -ae. Faciend-um, -i, &c. |
| — | (To have become.) Fact-um } Fact-am } esse. Fact-um } | (Having become.) Fact-us, -i. Fact-a, -ae. Fact-um, -i, &c. |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

SECTION X.—

EDO, *I eat.* PRINCIPAL PARTS

Edo is a regular verb of the Third Conjugation ; but some of its

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|--|---|
| <p><i>PRES.</i>—(I eat.) S. <i>Ēdo, Edis or ēs, Edit or ēst.</i> P. <i>Edimus, Editis or estis, Edunt.</i></p> | <p>(I may eat.) <i>Ēdam or Ēdim, Edas or Edis, Edat or Edit.</i> <i>Edamus or Edimus, Edatis or Edītis, Edant or Edint.</i></p> |
| <p><i>IMPERF.</i>—(I was eating.) S. <i>Ēdēbam, Edebas, Edebat.</i> P. <i>Edebamus, Edebatis, Edebant.</i></p> | <p>(I might eat.) <i>Ēdērem or essem, Ederes or esses, Ederet or esset.</i> <i>Ederemus, or essemus, &c.</i></p> |
| <p><i>FUT.</i>—(I shall eat.) S. <i>Ēdam, Edes, Edet.</i> P. <i>Edemus, Edetis, Edent.</i></p> | <p>(I may be about to eat.) <i>Ēsurus sim, Esurus sis, Esurus sit.</i> <i>Esuri simus, Esuri sitis, Esuri sint.</i></p> |
| <p><i>PERF.</i>—(I have eaten.) S. <i>Ēdi, Edisti, Edit.</i> P. <i>Edimus, Edisti, Ederunt.</i></p> | <p>(I may have eaten.) <i>Ēderim, Ederis, Ederit.</i> <i>Ederīmus, Ederītis, Ederint.</i></p> |
| <p><i>PLUPERF.</i>—(I had eaten.) S. <i>Ēderam, Ederas, Ederat.</i> P. <i>Ederamus, Ederatis, Ederant</i></p> | <p>(I might have eaten.) <i>Ēdissem, Edisses, Edisset.</i> <i>Edissemus, Edissetis, Edissent.</i></p> |
| <p><i>FUT. PERF.</i>—(I shall have eaten.) S. <i>Ēdero, Ederis, Ederit.</i> P. <i>Ederīmus, Ederītis, Ederint.</i></p> | <p>—</p> |

SUPINES—*Esūm, Esu.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

—Ĕdo, Ĕdī, Ĕsum, Ĕdĕre, or Esse.

forms are syncopated so as to be identical with certain parts of *sum*.

| IMPERATIVE. | INFINITIVE. | PARTICIPLE. |
|--|--|--|
| (Eat thou.) Ĕde or ĕs. Ĕdĭte or ĕsta. | (To eat.) Ĕdĕre or ĕsse. | (Eating.) Ĕdens, &c. |
| — | — | — |
| (Thou shalt eat.) Ĕdĭto or ĕsto, Ĕdĭto or esto. Ĕdĭtĕ or estote, Ĕdun- to. | (To be about to eat.) Ĕsur-us esse, &c. | (About to eat.) Ĕsŭr-us, -a, -um, &c. |
| — | (To have eaten.) Ĕdisse. | — |
| — | — | — |
| — | — | — |

GERUND—Edendi, Edendo, &c.

SECTION XI.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

1. DEFECTIVE VERBS are those which want some of their parts. Thus, *volo, malo, &c.*, are not only Irregular, but also Defective Verbs. The following, however, are more largely defective, since they either want the present and derived tenses, or have only a few isolated parts, principally of the present stem. Thus, *coepi*, I begin; *memini*, I remember; *odi*, I hate; and *novi*, I know, have only the *perfect* (preterite) tense and the forms derived from it: from which circumstance they are sometimes called *Preteritive Verbs*.

2. The perfects are translated as presents, the pluperfects as perfects indefinite or imperfects, and the future perfects as futures. The reason of this change is evident when we remember that *memini* literally means, I HAVE called to mind, *i.e.*, I remember; *odi*, I HAVE conceived a hatred, *i.e.*, I hate, &c.

INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|--------------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| Coepī. | Mēmīn-ī. | Od-ī. | Nōv-ī. |
| Coep-istī. | Mēmīn-istī. | Od-istī. | Nōv-istī. |
| Coep-it, &c. | Mēmīn-it, &c. | Ōd-it, &c. | Nōv-it, &c. |

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| Coep-eram. | Mēmīn-eram. | Ōd-eram. | Nōv-eram. |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|

FUTURE PERFECT.

| | | | |
|-----------|------------|---------|----------|
| Coep-ero. | Mēmīn-ero. | Ōd-ero. | Nōv-ero. |
|-----------|------------|---------|----------|

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| Coep-erim. | Mēmīn-erim. | Ōd-erim. | Nōv-erim. |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|

PLUPERFECT.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| Coep-isse. | Mēmīn-isse. | Ōd-isse. | Nōv-isse. |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|

IMPERATIVE.

FUTURE.

S. Mēmēn-to. | P. Mēmēn-tōte.

INFINITIVE.

| | | | |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|
| Coep-isse. | Mēmīn-isse. | Ōd-isse. | Nōv-isse. |
|------------|-------------|----------|-----------|

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.

Coep-tus. ———— \bar{O} -sus (*obsolete.*) (Nō-tus.)

FUTURE.

Coep-tūrus. ———— \bar{O} -sūrus. ————

3. *Ajo* or *aiō* I say, I say yes, has only the following parts:—

PRESENT INDICATIVE.

S. Ajo, Aīs, Aīt.
P. —, —, Aiunt.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

S. —, Aias, Aiat.
P. —, —, Aiant.

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

S. Aiebam, Aiebas, Aiebat.
P. Aiebamus, Aiebatis, Aiebant.

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

Aiens, *affirming.*

4. *Inquam*, I say, is likewise very defective. Of *inquam* it must be noticed, (1) that it is only used (like our, says I) in quoting the words of a person; and (2) that it never stands as the first word of a clause:—

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

S. Inquam, Inquis, Inquit.
P. Inquīmus, Inquītis, Inquiunt.

IMPERFECT.

S. —, —, Inquiēbat.

PERFECT.

S. —, Inquisti, Inquit.

FUTURE.

S. —, Inquiēs, Inquiet.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. Sing. Inque.

Fut. Sing. Inquīto,

5. *Fāri*, to speak, has the following parts:—

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. | IMP. | INF. | PARTICIPLE. |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|------|------|--------------------------|
| <i>PRES.—He speaks</i> Fatur. | — | Fāre | Fari | Fāntis, &c. (nom. rare.) |
| <i>FUT.—</i> Fābor, fābitur. | — | — | — | Fand-us, -a, -um, &c. |
| <i>PERF.—</i> Fātus sum, &c. | Fātus sim, &c. | — | — | Fāt-us, -a, -um, &c. |
| <i>PLUPERF.—</i> Fātus eram, &c. | Fātus essem &c. | — | — | — |

SUPINE—Fatu.

GERUND—Fand-i, -o, &c.

6. *Quaeso*, I entreat, and *quaesumus*, we entreat, are the only parts of this verb found. *Quaeso* is the old form for *quaero*.

7. *Avēre*, to hail, is found only in the infinitive and imperative; thus: *ave* (or *hāvē*), *āveto*, *āvete*; infinitive, *āvēre*.

8. *Apāgē*, plur. *apagete*, begone, are the only parts met with.

9. *Cēdo* plur. *cēdite*, or *cette*, give me.

10. *Salve*, *salvēto*, plur. *salvēte*, hail; infinitive, *salvēre*; future, *salvēbis*.

11. *Vālē*, plur. *vālēte*, farewell; infinitive, *vālēre*.

12. *Ausim*, *ausis*, *ausit*, —, —, *ausint*, for *audeam*, &c., I may dare.

13. *Fax-im*, *-is*, *-it*, *-imus*, *-itis*, *-int*, for *faciam*, I may do; or *fēcērim*, I may have done.

Also *Fax-o*, *-is*, *-it*, —, *-itis*, *-int*, for *fecero*, I shall have done; or *faciam*, I shall do.

SECTION XII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Impersonal Verbs are used only in the third person singular, and have no *personal* subject—*i.e.*, have no substantive or substantive pronoun as their subject. They are like the English phrases, *it snōws*, *it rains*, *it happens*, &c.

2. The third singular of regular verbs is sometimes used impersonally; as, *accidit*, it happens, from *accido*, I fall in with, happen on.

3. The following refer to the weather and certain natural phenomena:—

Pluit, *it rains*.

Ningit, *it snows*.

Grandīnat, *it hails*.

Lapidat, or **lapidatum est**, *stones fall from heaven*.

Lucescit and **illucescit**, *it dawns*.

Fulgūrat and **fulminat**, *it lightens*.

Tōnat, *it thunders*.*

Vesperascit and **advesperascit**, *it grows dark*.

4. The following six, referring to feelings of the mind, take the

* Some of these are occasionally used as personal. Thus we find *Jupiter tonat*; and in a figurative sense, *orator tonat*.

accusative of the person experiencing the feeling; as, *Miseret me tui*, I pity you, (literally, It pities me of you):—

| | |
|--|--|
| Miseret (me), <i>I pity</i> ; perf. miseritum est, misertum est, or miseruit. | Pudet (me), <i>I am ashamed</i> ; perf. puduit, or puditum est. |
| Piget (me), <i>I regret</i> ; perf. piguit, or pigitum est. | Taedet (me), <i>I am disgusted</i> ; perf. pertaesum est, and rarely taeduit. |
| Poenitet (me), <i>I repent</i> ; perf. poenituit. | Oportet (me), <i>it is necessary for me</i> , <i>I must</i> ; perf. oportuit. |

5. Some have a substantive as their subject, and are used in the third plural, with a neuter plural as subject; as, *Parvum parva decent*:—

| | |
|---|--|
| Dēcet (me), <i>it becomes me</i> ; perf. dēcuit. | Lībet , or lubet (mihi), <i>I like</i> , <i>choose</i> ; perf. libuit, or libitum est. |
| Dēdēcet (me), <i>it does not become me</i> ; perf. dēdēcuit. | Līcet (mihi), <i>I am permitted</i> ; perf. licuit, or licitum est. |
| Līquet , <i>it is obvious</i> ; perf. licuit. | |

6. Some personal verbs are used *impersonally* in the *third* person singular, and with a meaning more or less different from that of the personal forms:—

| | |
|---|--|
| Interest and rēfert , <i>it is of importance to</i> . | Dēlectat and jūvat (me), <i>it delights me</i> . |
| Accīdit , ēvenit , contingit , or fit , <i>it happens</i> . | Fallit , fūgit , and praeterit (me), <i>it escapes me</i> . |
| Accēdit , <i>it is added to</i> , or <i>in addition to</i> . | Plācet , <i>it pleases</i> ; perf. plācuit, or plācitum est. |
| Attīnet and pertīnet (ad), <i>it concerns or pertains to</i> . | Praestat , <i>it is better</i> . |
| Condūcit , <i>it is conducive</i> . | Restat , <i>it remains</i> . |
| Convēnit , <i>it suits</i> . | Vacat , <i>it is wanting</i> . |
| Constat , <i>it is known or established</i> . | Est , in the sense of licet , <i>it is permitted</i> . |
| Expēdit , <i>it is expedient</i> . | |

7. Most verbs may be used *impersonally* in the *passive* voice. This usually happens in the case of *intransitive* verbs, which otherwise have no passive: as, *curritur*, they run; literally, it is run, *i.e.*, running is taking place. Thus, *pugnatur*, they fight, (the battle is carried on;) *pugnabatur*, they were fighting; *pugnatum est*, they

fight, &c.: *vivitur*, people live, (*i.e.*, life is maintained :) *ventum est*, they came, &c.

8. Impersonal verbs of the active form have no passive voice. Most of them have the tenses of the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive complete, but no other parts; thus,—

OPORTET, *it behoves.*

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|---|--|
| <i>Present.</i> Oportet , <i>it behoves.</i> | Oporteat , <i>it may behove.</i> |
| <i>Imperf.</i> Oportebat , <i>it behoved.</i> | Oportēret , <i>it might behove.</i> |
| <i>Future.</i> Oportēbit , <i>it will behove.</i> | — |
| <i>Perfect.</i> Oportuit , <i>it behoved.</i> | Oportuerit , <i>it may have behoved.</i> |
| <i>Pluperf.</i> Oportuerat , <i>it had behoved.</i> [behoved.] | Oportuisset , <i>it might have behoved.</i> |
| <i>F. Perf.</i> Oportuerit , <i>it will have</i> | — |

INFINITIVE.

Oportēre, *to behove*; **oportuisse**, *to have behoved.*

Obs.—When the person is to be expressed, it is put in the accusative: as, *oportet me*, it behoves me; *oportet cum*, it behoves him, he ought, &c.

CHAPTER XI.—ADVERBS.

1. An Adverb is a word which is used with verbs, adjectives, and adverbs, to modify their meaning in regard to time, place, manner, degree, &c.: as, *Tum præerat exercitui*; he at that time commanded the army: *Acrius pugnant*; they fight keenly.

2. As to form, adverbs are of three classes: Simple, Derivative, and Compound.

3. Simple or primitive adverbs are such as cannot be traced to any root: as, *sæpe*, often; *non*, not; *nunc*, now; *mox*, presently.

4. Derivative adverbs contain the stem of some adjective, substantive, or other part of speech.

5. Compound adverbs are made up of two or more words: as, *hodie* for *hoc die*; *tantummodo* for *tantum modo*; *quamobrem* for *ob quam rem*; *magnopere* for *magno opere*; *quamvis* for *quam vis*.

6. Many adverbs, especially those derived from adjectives, are sub-

ject to comparison. The comparative of the adverb is generally the nominative singular neuter of the adjectival comparative; thus, *doctior, doctior, doctius*,—this neuter, *doctius*, being used as the comparative of the adverb *docte*. From the superlative, *doctissimus*, is formed the adverb *doctissimē*.

| ADJECTIVES. | ADVERBS. | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|--|
| | POSITIVE. | COMPARATIVE. | SUPERLATIVE. |
| Doctus, <i>learned.</i> | Doctē, <i>learnedly.</i> | Doctius, <i>more learnedly.</i> | Doctissimē, <i>most learnedly.</i> |
| Felix, fortunate. | Fēliciter. | Fēlicius. | Felicissime. |
| Fortis, brave. | Fortiter. | Fortius. | Fortissime. |
| Gravis, heavy. | Graviter. | Gravius. | Gravissime. |
| Similis, like. | Similiter. | Similius. | Simillime. |
| Liber, free. | Libere. | Liberius. | Liberrime. |
| Pulcher, beautiful. | Pulchre. | Pulchrius. | Pulcherrime. |
| Aeger, sick. | Aegre. | Aegrius. | Aegerrime. |
| Audax, bold. | Audacter. | Audacius. | Audacissime. |
| Amans, loving. | Amanter. | Amantius. | Amantissime. |
| Prudens, wise. | Prudenter. | Prudentius. | Prudentissime. |

7. In comparison, adverbs follow the irregularities of the adjectives from which they are derived: as,—

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| Bōnus, good. | Bēnē, well. | Mēlius, better. | Optimē, best. |
| Mālus, bad. | Mālē. | Pējus. | Pessimē. |
| Multus, much, many. | Multum. | Plūs. | Plūrimum. |
| Magnus, great. | Magnum. | Magis. | Maxime. |
| (Propinquus, near.) | Prōpe. | Prōpius. | Proxime. |
| (Pro or prae, before.) | — | Prius. | Primum, or primo. |
| Valīdus, strong. | Valde. | Validius. | Validissime. |

8. Only a few of the primitive adverbs suffer comparison:

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Diū, long. | Diūtius. | Diūtissimē. |
| Saepē, often. | Saepius. | Saepissimē. |
| Sēcus, otherwise. | Sēcius. | — |
| Tempērī, in time. | Tempērius. | — |
| Nūper, lately. | — | Nuperrimē. |
| Sātīs, enough, or sufficient. | Sātius. | — |

CHAPTER XII.—PREPOSITIONS.

1. A **PREPOSITION** is a word which is placed before substantives to show in what relation a thing, an action, or an attribute, stands to some other thing: as, *Fiscos cum pecuniâ*, bags with money; *Venit in urbem*, he came into the city.

2. Some prepositions govern the accusative case, some the ablative, and a few both the accusative and the ablative.

3. The following govern the accusative only:—

Ad, to, up to, near, or nearly.
Adversus, or **adversum**, opposite,
Antē, before. [against.
Āpud, near, with.
Circa or **circum**, around, about.
Circiter, about (in regard to time
or number).
Cis or **citra**, on this side of.
Contrā, against.
Ergā, towards.
Extrā, without (opposite of within).
Infrā, below, beneath.
Inter, between, among.
Intrā, within.

Juxtā, near to, or beside.
Ob, against, or on account of.
Pĕnēs, in the power of.
Per, through.
Pōnē, behind.
Post, after.
Praeter, besides, excepting.
Propter, on account of, close by.
Sĕcundum, next after, in accordance with.
Suprā, above.
Trans, on the other side of, beyond.
Ultrā, beyond.
Versus, towards (a place).

4. The following govern the ablative only:—

A, ab, or abs, from.
Absquĕ, without (wanting).
Cōram, in the presence of.
Cum, with.
Dē, down from, concerning.
E or **ex**, out of, of.

Prae, before, in consequence of.
Prō, before, instead of.
Pĕlam, with the knowledge of.
Sĭne, without (i.e., not with).
Tĕnus, up to, as far as.

5. These five govern both the accusative and the ablative;—the accusative when motion towards is signified; the ablative when rest or position in is meant: as,—

| | With the Accusative. | With the Ablative. |
|-----------------|---|--------------------|
| In , | into, against. | in. |
| Sub , | under, about, towards. | under. |
| Sūper , | above, over. | upon, concerning. |
| Subter , | { under, beneath; generally with the accusative in either sense, rarely with the ablative. | |
| Clam , | without the knowledge of. | |

CHAPTER XIII.—CONJUNCTIONS.

1. A CONJUNCTION is that part of speech which serves to connect words, phrases, clauses, and sentences to one another, each to one of its own kind: as, *Pater et mater*, father and mother; *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn.

2. *As to form*, conjunctions are of two kinds:—(1.) Simple: as, *et, ac, ut, aut*. (2.) Compound: as, *atque, quamvis, attamen*.

3. *As to use*, conjunctions may be divided into two classes:—

(1.) Co-ordinative, which are employed to connect clauses that are on an equality with one another; *i.e.*, either (a) primary clauses, or (b) secondary clauses standing in the same relation to the governing clause. Such are, *et, ac, -que* (always attached to a word), *atque, sed, vel, aut, nec, neque, &c.*

(2.) Subordinative—which connect a secondary clause to a primary or leading clause. These are, *ut, si, quum, ne, quo, ubi, dum, &c.*

CHAPTER XIV.—INTERJECTIONS.

1. An Interjection is a word which is used to express some emotion of the mind, such as joy, grief, astonishment, contempt, &c.: as, *eu* or *euge*, bravo! *eheu*, alas! *ecce*, lo! *apage*, away! *begone!* *heus*, holla!

2. Interjections are *thrown in* between the parts of a sentence without influencing the syntax. Some of them, however, when used in connection with a noun, prefer a special case; thus, *O, heu, proh*, take a vocative of address, but an accusative of exclamation: as, *O formose puer*, O beautiful boy! *Heu me infelicem!* ah, luckless me! *Heus tu*, holla, you there! *Vae*, woe, prefers the dative (rarely the accusative): as, *Vae mihi*, woe's me! *Hei mihi*, ah me!

3. Other parts of speech are frequently used as interjections: as, *pax*, peace! hush!—*infandum*, monstrous! shame!—*miserum*, wretched!—*cito*, quick!—*Mehercule*, by Hercules!

P A R T I I.—S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.—SENTENCES.

1. SYNTAX treats of the use of words in the formation of sentences, and of the relation of sentences or clauses to one another. The word *Syntax* literally means *arrangement*.

2. A thought expressed in words is called a Proposition or Sentence.

3. Sentences are of two kinds, Simple and Compound.

4. A Simple Sentence consists of a single proposition: as,—
Puer legit; the boy reads.

5. A Compound Sentence is one made up of two or more propositions: as,—

Puer legit, et scribit; the boy reads and writes.

Puer legit, ut discat; the boy reads that he may learn.

6. The sentences which go to make up a compound sentence are also called *Clauses*.

SUBJECT.

7. From the definition of a sentence given above, it follows that every sentence must consist of two parts; (1.) That which represents the person or thing spoken about; and, (2.) That which is said about such person or thing.

8. The Subject is the name of that about which something is asserted, and is generally a substantive, a pronoun, an adjective used substantively, or a phrase.

9. Subjects are of three kinds,—Simple, Compound, and Complex.

10. A subject is called Simple when it consists of only one substantive: as,—

Aquila volat; the eagle flies.

11. A subject is called Compound when it consists of two or more substantives connected by conjunctions, or supposed to be connected: as,—

Aquila et vultur volant; the eagle and the vulture fly.

Pater, mater, filius in horto ambulat; the father, mother, (and) son are walking in the garden.

12. A subject is called **Complex** when it consists of a phrase, or quotation, or clause: as,—

Quod librum legisti (subj.)—*gratum est mihi*; that you have read the book—is gratifying to me

13. The subject is often enlarged by the addition of an *adjective*, *substantive*, or *phrase*, which serves to define it more closely, and limit its signification: as,—

Gallia OMNIS divisa est; all Gaul is divided.

Miltiades, ATHENIENSIS, FILIUS CIMONIS, florebat; Miltiades, the Athenian, son of Cimon, was in good repute.

14. The subject to a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood, is always in the nominative case; to a verb in the infinitive, it is in the accusative. (See Art. 7 of following chapter.)

Puer legit; the boy reads.

Equi currunt; the horses run.

15. The Predicate is that which is asserted of the subject; and is either (a) a verb, or (b) a substantive, adjective, or participle connected with the subject by part of one of the verbs *to be*, *exist*, *become*, *be named*, *be elected*, and such like: as,—

Aquila (subj.)—*volat* (pred.); the eagle flies.

Miltiades erat filius Cimōnis; Miltiades was the son of Cimon.

Obs.—In the second example, the verb *erat* which connects the subject and predicate is called the *Copula*, or connecting link.

16. The predicate is often enlarged by the addition of an adjective, substantive, or phrase: as,—

Cicero (subj.)—*erat summus orator* (pred.); Cicero was a very great orator.

Miles (subj.)—*hostem gladio occidit* (pred.); the soldier slew his foe with a sword.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

17. The clauses of a Compound Sentence are either (1.) Principal or independent; or, (2.) Subordinate or dependent.

18. A Principal Clause is one which makes a leading assertion; its construction does not depend on any other clause.

19. A Subordinate Clause is one which makes a statement explanatory of, or contingent on, the principal clause; as,—

The priestess of Apollo advised them (*principal*)—that they should choose Miltiades as their leader (*subordinate*).

20. *Obs.*—Hence it follows that a subordinate clause cannot stand by itself, but, to be understood, must be accompanied by a principal clause.
21. The clauses of a compound sentence are connected together :
 (a) By conjunctions ; as, *et, atque, ac, sed, aut, nam, &c.*
 (b) By relative adverbs ; as, *quare, unde, &c.*
 (c) By the forms of the relative pronoun, *qui, quae, quod.*
22. Clauses which are connected by a co-ordinative* conjunction, *et, ac, atque, &c.*, are called CO-ORDINATE.
23. *Obs.*—Hence it follows that co-ordinate clauses may be either principal or subordinate.
24. Subordinate or secondary clauses are connected with the principal clauses on which they depend by the forms of the relative pronoun, or by conjunctions and relative adverbs ; as, *qui, quae, quod ; ut, quo, quin, quominus, quare, quum, quando, &c.*
25. Subordinate clauses are generally introduced to express such circumstances as *time, cause, result, purpose, condition, &c.*
26. When the subject or the verb of a clause is suppressed, the clause is called a contracted one : as,—
Miltiades direxit cursum, pervēnitque, &c. (i.e., *et Miltiades pervenit*) ; Miltiades steered his course, and (Miltiades) reached, &c.

CHAPTER II.—AGREEMENT OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

1. Rule I.—A verb agrees with its subject in number and person : † as,—

Ego ‡ sum pastor ; I am a shepherd.

Tu es latro ; thou art a robber.

Puer currit ; the boy runs.

Saltant ; ‡ they dance.

Currēbam ; I was running.

* See p. 115, chap. xiii. 3.

† See Art. 14 of preceding chapter.

‡ The person-endings of the Latin verb (see p. 59, Art. 26) are so distinctly marked that the personal pronouns are expressed only when particularly emphatic, as when one individual is to be put in strong contrast to another. The subject is very often omitted in the third person also, when it is easily supplied by the context.

2. Rule II.—A compound subject* has a verb in the plural: as,—

Pater et filius in horto ambulat; the father and son are walking in the garden.

3. If the members of a compound subject be of different persons, the verb is put in the first person † rather than in the second, and in the second rather than in the third: as,—

Ego et tu et ille sumus amici; you and he and I are friends.

Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus; if Tullia and you are well, Cicero and I are well.

4. *Ecc.*—The verb often agrees with that member of a compound subject which is nearest to it: as,—

Amat te pater, et mater, et fratres; your father loves you, and your mother (too), and your brothers.

5. A collective noun, or a distributive pronoun, *may* have a verb in the plural: as,—

Pars cedunt; a part (*i.e.*, some) give way.

Decimus quisque ad supplicium lecti sunt; every tenth man was selected for punishment.

6. Rule III.—A complex subject has a verb in the singular: as,—

Humanum est errare; it is natural for man to err.

In errore perserverare turpe est; to persevere in error is disgraceful.

7. Rule IV.—The subject to a verb in the infinitive mood is put in the accusative: as,—

Nuntiatum est Caesari, eos conari iter facere; it was reported to Caesar that they are attempting to march, &c.,—literally, them to be attempting to march.

* See Art. 11 of preceding chapter.

† That is, the verb is 1st pers. if one of the members of the subject be 1st pers.; and 2nd pers. if there are only 2nd and 3rd persons in the subject

CHAPTER III.—AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

1. Rule I.—An adjective * agrees with its own substantive † in gender, number, and case: as,—

Puer est sēdūlus; the boy is diligent.

Puella est sēdūla; the girl is diligent.

Ver est longum; the spring is long.

Sorōres tuas; your sisters.

2. If an adjective refers to a substantive in a different clause, it agrees with it in gender and number only: as,—

Amicus adest, sed eum non video; my friend is present, but I do not see him. And thus,—

3. Rule II.—The relative pronoun ‡ agrees with its antecedent substantive in gender and number, and also in person: as,—

Cares, qui tum incolebant Lemnum; the Carians, who at that time inhabited Lemnos.

4. *Obs.*—The case of the relative depends on the construction of the clause to which it belongs, according as the relative is subject or object to the verb, or depends on a substantive or adjective.

5. Rule III.—When an adjective § applies to two or more substantives, whether singular or plural, it is put in the plural number: as,—

Pater et filius sunt clari; the father and the son are famous.

Tu et frater tuus, qui estis clari; your brother and you, who are famous.

6. When an adjective § applies to two or more substantives of different genders, it takes the gender of the masculine substantive

* Adjective is used in its widest sense, including pronouns, numerals, and participles.

† By the term "own substantive," is meant the substantive in the same clause as the adjective, and modified by it.

‡ It will be seen that the relative pronoun is simply an adjective in a subsequent clause referring to a substantive in a preceding one, and is therefore an example of the principle laid down in Art. 2.

§ The term *adjective* in this and the following articles includes the relative pronoun. See Note * above.

rather than that of the feminine, and of the feminine rather than of the neuter: as,—

Puter et mater puellae sunt mortui; the father and the mother of the girl are dead.

Matres et parvuli liberi, quorum aetas, &c.; the mother and little children, whose age, &c.

7. *Exc.*—But an adjective* often agrees only with the substantive which is nearest to it: as,—

Orgetorigis filia, et unus e filiis captus est; the daughter of Orgetorix, and one of his sons, was taken captive.

Eae fruges atque fructus, quos terra gignit; those crops and fruits which the earth brings forth.

8. **Rule IV.**—When an adjective refers to a phrase or a clause it must be neuter: as,—

Humanum est errare; it is natural to man to err.

Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori; it is sweet and becoming to die for one's fatherland.

9. Adjectives are often used as if they were substantives; those referring to males being masc.; to females, fem.; and to things, neut.: as,—

Boni et sapientes ex urbe pulsati sunt; the good and wise (*men*) have been banished from the city.

CHAPTER IV.—APPOSITION.†

1. **Rule I.**—Substantives that stand in apposition to one another agree in case: as,—

Miltiades, filius Cimonis; Miltiades, the son of Cimon.

Tullia, deliciae meae; Tullia, my darling.

2. *Obs.*—The same rule applies when the second substantive is used as part of the predicate: as,—

Caesar erat summus imperator; Caesar was a most distinguished commander.

N.B.—This kind of apposition occurs with—

- (1.) Substantive verbs, (as, *sum, existo, fio, &c.*)
- (2.) Passive verbs of naming and choosing, (as, *nominor, creor.*)
- (3.) Verbs of seeming or being thought, (as, *vidor, existimor.*)
- (4.) Verbs of gesture, (as, *incedo.*)

* See Note §, p. 120.

† Two substantives are said to be in *apposition*, when the one is appended to the other to explain or limit it.

3. Rule II.—A substantive in apposition to two or more substantives is usually in the plural: as,—

Cneius et Publius Scipiones; Cneius and Publius Scipio
(i.e., the Scipios, Cneius and Publius).

CHAPTER V.—THE NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE CASES.

1. THE Nominative is used to express the subject of the sentence, or the substantival predicate. (See p. 117, Art. 14; and p. 121, iv., Art. 2.)

2. The nominative is used after the infinitive with such verbs as *possum, völo, nölo, mälo, coepi, videor*: as,—

Miltiades non völebatur posse esse privätus; Miltiades did not appear to be able to remain a private citizen.

3. The Vocative is used in expressions of address; as, *Fili!* O son! But the nominative often takes the place of the vocative, even in address.

CHAPTER VI.—THE ACCUSATIVE.

1. THE Accusative expresses the direct object of an action indicated by a transitive verb. It answers to the questions, Whom? What? To what place? During what time? &c.

2. Rule I.—Transitive verbs govern * the accusative of the object: as,—

Fugat hostes; he routs the enemy.

Mittunt colonos; they send colonists.

3. Obs.—But many transitive verbs govern the genitive, dative, or ablative. (See chaps. vii., viii., and ix.)

* By the term "govern," it is simply meant that the *practice* of the Latins was to put an accusative case after a transitive verb; just as in English it is the practice to use that form of the substantive which we call the "objective" (accusative) case after transitive verbs and prepositions: as, "He struck me,"—*not*, "He struck I;" "I walked with him,"—*not*, "I walked with he."

4. Any verb, whether it be transitive or intransitive, may govern, in the accusative, a substantive of kindred signification: as,—

Vivere beatam vitam; to live a happy life.

Pugnam pugnare; to fight a battle.

Hence,—

5. Rule II.—Many verbs* are followed by two accusatives,—the one expressing a person, the other a thing: † as,—

Caesar flagitat frumentum Aeduos; Caesar demands corn from the Aedui.

Puer patrem nihil celavit; the boy concealed nothing from his father.

6. Rule III.—After verbs expressing or implying motion, the names of towns and small islands, with *domus*, *rus*, and such terms, are put in the accusative, to indicate the “point to which:” as,—

Pervenit Lemnum; he reaches Lemnus.

Delecti missi sunt Delphos; chosen men were sent to Delphi.

Rediit domum; he returned home.

Rus ibo; I shall go to the country.

7. *Obs.*—With names of countries and large islands a preposition is generally used (but the poets often omit the prep.): as,—

Revertitur in Asiam; he returns to Asia.

8. Rule IV.—The accusative expresses extent of space and duration of time: as,—

Perdixit fossam sedecim pedes altam; he ran a ditch sixteen feet deep.

Diem noctemque in salo navem tenuit; he kept the ship out at sea for a day and a night.

9. Rule V.—The Prepositions, *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c., govern the accusative: ‡ as,—

Ad eos; to them.

Apud Helvetios; among the Helvetii.

* Such are verbs of asking, teaching, entreating, warning, concealing, &c. But *peto*, *postulo*, and *quaero* take the ablative with a prep., *ab*, *de*, *ex*, &c.

† It will be observed that the “accusative of the thing” is really an accusative of kindred signification, and therefore merely completes the meaning of the verb.

‡ See p. 114, 3.

10. Rule VI.—The prepositions, *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, take an accusative when “motion towards or throughout” is expressed: * as,—

Ire in urbem; to go into the city.

Navigat super segetes; he sails over (above) his corn-fields.

11. Prepositions, when compounded with other words, often govern the same case as they do in the simple form: as,—

Milites ducem circumsteterunt; the soldiers surrounded their general.

Exercitus Rhenum transducitur; the army is carried over the Rhine.

12. Many intransitive verbs of motion, when compounded with the prepositions *trans*, *circum*, *per*, *super*, *praeter*, *ad*, *cum*, *in*, *subter*, (and sometimes *prae* and *ob*,) become transitive, and thus take an accusative: as,—

Exercitus flumen transit; the army crossed the river.

Urbem obsident; they besiege the city.

13. The accusative is used (along with the genitive) after the impersonal verbs *miseret*, *poenitet*, *pulet*, *taedet*, and *piget*. (See p. 128, 10.) So *dæcet* and *dædæcet* often take the accusative of the person.

14. The accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an interjection (but see p. 126, 16): as,—

Me miserum! (or, *O me miserum!*) wretched me!

Heu me infelicem! ah, luckless me!

CHAPTER VII.—THE DATIVE.

1. THE Dative indicates the person or thing *to which*, *for which*,† or *in reference to which*, something is done. Hence,—

2. The dative denotes the individual (person or thing) to which anything is given or communicated: as,—

Honos Miltiadi tributus est; honour was awarded to Miltiades.

Legati nuntiant Caesari; the lieutenants report to Caesar.

* See p. 152, 25.

† “For,” signifying “in defence of,” is to be translated by *pro* with the abl.; as, *Pro patria mori*; to die for one’s fatherland.

3. The dative indicates the individual benefited or injured in any way: as,—

Pastor insidias lupo parat; the shepherd lays snares for the wolf.

Obs.—In this example *insidias* expresses the immediate object of the action, the thing prepared; while *lupo* denotes the *remote object*, or the individual in regard to whom the preparation is made.

4. Rule I.—Verbs signifying advantage or disadvantage govern the dative: as,—

Bonis nocet, quisquis malis perpercerit; he does harm to the good, who spares the bad.

5. *Obs.* 1.—The principle of “advantage or disadvantage” laid down in Arts. 3 and 4 is a very comprehensive one, and to it may be referred by far the greater number of instances in which the dative occurs. It is more especially manifest in the following classes of verbs:—
(a) To consult for, help; spare, indulge, &c. (b) To please; serve, obey; threaten; hurt, &c. (c) To trust, persuade, marry (of the female); command, * &c. (d) Most verbs compounded with one of the ten prepositions, *ad, ante—in, inter—post, prae—sub, super—con* and *ob*;—and many verbs compounded with other prepositions—as, *ab, circum, de, ex, re-* (inseparable).

Obs. 2.—The passives of verbs governing the dative are used impersonally; as, *Mihi invidetur*; I am envied.

6. But the preposition is often repeated with its case, more particularly in verbs compounded with *ad, con, in*: as,—

Communicare aliquid cum aliquo; to make known to a person.
Inferre signa in hostes; to advance against the enemy.

Obs.—Many of the verbs in the lists of Art. 5 are followed by an accusative or ablative. For the peculiarities of each, the student must consult his Dictionary.

7. Under one or other of the heads in Art. 5 are included *sum* (when used as equal to *habeo*) and its compounds, except *possum*: as,—

Est mihi liber; I have a book.
Prodest amicis; he benefits his friends.

8. Rule II.—Adjectives, signifying advantage or disadvantage likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative: as,—

Utilis reipublicae; profitable to the state.
Similis patri; like his father (in features, &c.)

* But *juro, sublevo, laedo, delecto, offendo, rego, jubeo, and guberno*, govern the acc., and some of the verbs noted in Art. 5 take the acc. with the dat.

9. *Obs.*—Such adjectives are,—(a) Friendly, useful, fit,* necessary, and their opposites. (b) Like (in externals), equal, near to, and their opposites.

10. Adverbs of a meaning similar to that of the above adjectives also take a dative: as,—

Convenienter naturae; agreeably to nature.

11. Two datives are sometimes used after the verbs to be, give, come, send, impute,† &c.; the one indicating the *person benefited*, and the other the *object, end, or result* of the action: as,—

Miserunt equitatum auxilio Caesari;‡ they sent the cavalry for a help to Caesar.

12. The dative is often used after passive verbs and passive adjectives, to denote the principal agent, instead of the ablative with *a* or *ab*: as,—

Mihi susceptum est; it was undertaken by me.

Minus probatus parentibus; disapproved of by his parents.

Obs.—So the dative is regularly used after the gerundive with *est*: as, *Moriendum est omnibus*; all must die.

13. Rule III.—Some impersonal verbs govern the dative; e.g., *contingit, expēdit, libet, &c.*: as,—

Expedit reipublicae; it is profitable for the state.

Licet nemini peccare; no man is permitted to sin.

14. The dative is used after the impersonal phrase *Opus est* (there is need), to indicate the person for whom something is necessary: as,—

Dux nobis opus est; we need a commander.

15. *Obs.*—It will be seen that in those constructions which are usually placed under the common rule, “Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the dative with the accusative,” the dative is simply a dative of the remote object, as explained in one or other of the preceding articles; and the accusative is an accusative of the direct object.

16. The dative is used with some interjections: as,—

Hic mihi! ah, me!

Vae vobis! woe to you!

* But those denoting fitness or unfitness more usually take the acc. with *at*: as, *Locus aptus ad insidias*; a place fitted for an ambush.

† The verbs most commonly followed by a double dative are *sum, do, duco, tribuo, certo, accipio, relinquo, deligo, mitto, venio, habeo*.

‡ But *Caesari* may depend here on *auxilio*.

CHAPTER VIII.—THE GENITIVE.

1. THE Genitive Case partakes largely of the nature of an adjective; and thus a substantive in the genitive is generally conjoined with another substantive in such a way that the two make up one definite idea: as, *Patris domus*, the father's house; *i.e.*, the paternal house. The genitive also depends on verbs, adjectives, and adverbs. It answers to the questions, Whose? Of whom? Of what?

2. Rule I.—A substantive which limits the meaning of another substantive, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive: as,—

Lex naturæ; the law of nature.

Amor parentum; the love of parents.

Obs.—*Lex* and *amor* are general terms, and might apply to law and love in their widest acceptations. But the genitives *naturæ* and *parentum* limit the application of the others, and confine them to one kind of law and one kind of love.

3. Hence the genitive denotes the author or possessor: as,—

Caesãris filius; Caesar's son

Libri Ciceronis; the books of Cicero (*i.e.*, either his writings or his property).

4. Rule II.—The genitive depending on part of the verb *sum*, expresses the person to whom belongs a duty, part, or characteristic: as,—

Regis est leges administrare; it is the king's duty to execute the laws.

Stulti est consilium contemnere; it is the mark of a fool to despise advice.

5. *Exc.*—But the possessive pronouns are used in the nominative singular neuter: as,—

Meum est id procurare; it is my duty to manage that.

6. Rule III.—The word expressing the whole, a part of which is spoken of, is put in the genitive: * as,—

Magna vis hominum; a great number of men.

Multum pecuniae; much money.

Quid novi? † what news?

* This is called the partitive genitive.

† But if the adjective were of the third declension this would not be allowable, as it would cause ambiguity. We could not say, *quid utilis*, or *aliquid utilis*; but *quid vtilis*, or *aliquid vtile*.

Satis pecuniae; enough of money.

Ubicunque terrarum; in whatever part of the earth.

Quis vestrum? which of you?

Doctissimus Romanorum; the most learned of the Romans.

- 7 *Obs.*—The words which usually govern such genitives are,—(a) The nominative or accusative singular neuter of quantitative adjectives and pronouns; as, *multum, minus, nihil, id, quid, &c.* (b) Adverbs of quantity—*satis, nimis*; of place—*co, ibi, ubi*; of time—*postea, interea.* (c) All partitive words, of whatever kind—substantives, adjectives, numerals, pronouns, the comparatives and superlatives of adjectives.

8. Rule IV.—Substantives indicating quality, nature, extent, &c., are put in the genitive; but in such cases they are accompanied by an adjective: as,—

Puer magni ingenii; a boy of great talent.

9. Rule V.—The genitive is used to express the object of mental affections after certain adjectives and verbs: as,—

Ignarus mali; ignorant of evil.

Memor beneficii; mindful of a favour.

Avidus gloriae; greedy of fame.

10. *Obs.*—Such are,—(a) Adjectives denoting knowledge, memory, certainty, inclination to, patience, and their opposites. (b) Verbs signifying to remember, pity, forget:* as, *Miserere servorum*; have pity on the slaves. (c) Certain impersonal verbs, such as *refert* and *interest*, †—as, *Refert regis*, it concerns the king; and *miseret, poenitet, pudet, taedet*, and *piget*, to express the object which excites pity, shame, &c.: as, *Miseret me tui*; I pity you.

11. Rule VI.—The genitive expresses the object, after verbs and adjectives denoting plenty, ‡ power, participation, likeness, § and their opposites: as,—

Indigebat opum; he needed resources.

Plenus irae; full of anger.

Similis patris; like his father (in nature, disposition, &c.)

* Verbs signifying to remember or forget also take the acc.

† But with these verbs the possessive pronouns are used in the forms *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*: as, *Non mea refert*, it does not concern me. Some scholars consider these forms as the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re*; while others regard the phrases as abbreviations for *rem meam fert*, and *inter rem est meam.* (See Key, Lat. Gr., § 910.)

‡ Adjectives of plenty or want also take the abl.

§ Adjectives of likeness or unlikeness also take the dat.

12. Price or value, when stated in an indefinite way, is put in the genitive, in the case of such adjectives as *magnus*, *plurimus*, *plus*, *minor*, &c: as,—

Avarus divitias magni aestimat; the avaricious man sets a great value on wealth.

Pravum minimi habeo; I hold the worthless man in very small esteem.

13. *N.B.*—If a *substantive* is used to indicate the price, it is usually put in the ablative; and even with the adjectives noted in Art. 12 the ablative is often used.

14. **Rule VII.**—The crime or ground of accusation is expressed in the genitive after verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting: as,—

Miltiadem proditionis accusaverunt; they accused Miltiades of treason.

15. **Rule VIII.**—The name of a place where an event is said to occur is put in the genitive, if the substantive be of the first or second declension, and the singular number: * as,—

Mortuus est Magnesiæ; he died at Magnesia.

Habebat domum Corinthi; he had his home at Corinth.

16. The following phrases are also in the genitive:—*Domus*, at home; *Belli* or *militiæ*, at war, (in the phrase, *Domus belliquæ*); *Humi*, on the ground.

CHAPTER IX.—THE ABLATIVE.

1. THE Ablative is used in Latin to express those relations which in English we indicate by *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *at*, &c. Hence it denotes—

2. The cause or reason: as,—

Ardeo studio; I burn with (*i.e.*, by reason of) zeal.

3. The instrument, means, or material: as,—

Interfecit hostem gladio; he slew his enemy with a sword.

Vivunt lacte et carne; they live on milk and flesh.

4. Articles 1, 2, and 9, may be expressed in the words of Ruddiman's familiar rule:—

* See chap. ix. 21, p. 132.

Rule I.—The cause, manner, and instrument, are put in the ablative.

Obs.—Otherwise, the word which expresses the *cause* why a thing is done, the *manner* in which it is done, or the *instrument* by which it is done, is put in the ablative.

5. Under one or other of the two preceding heads comes the ablative, after the adjectives *contentus*, *nātus*, *sātus*, *ortus*, *ēditus*, and the like ; also *frētus*, *praeditus* ; as,—

Frētus nūmēro copiarum ; relying on the number of his forces.

Ortus rēgibus ; descended from kings.

6. But if the agent (or instrument) be a person, the preposition *a* or *ab* is used : as,—

Caesar certior factus est ab exploratoribus ; Caesar is certified by scouts.

7. **Rule II.**—The deponent verbs, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, take the ablative of the object: as,—

Potiri imperio ; to take possession of the sovereignty.

N.B.—Ablatives after these verbs are simply examples of the “cause, manner, and instrument.”

8. *Exc.*—But *potior* often takes the genitive : as,—

Potiri Galliae ; to take possession of Gaul.

9. **Rule III.**—The mode or manner in which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative: as,—

Fecit more majorum ; he did it after the manner of his ancestors.

10. Allied to the foregoing construction is the ablative of limitation expressed in English by *as to*, *in regard to*: as,—

Aeger pedibus ; diseased in the feet.

Captus oculis ; blind.

Gallus natione ; a Gaul by birth.

Major natu ; older.

11. **Rule IV.**—The ablative denotes supply, with verbs and adjectives signifying plenty, want,* filling, emptying, &c.: as,—

Germania fluminibus abundat ; Germany abounds in rivers.

Carebat nomine ; he was without the name.

Plenus ira ; full of anger.

* *Egco* and *indigro* also take the genitive. See chap. viii. 11, p. 128.

12. *Opus est*, and *usus est*, one has need, may take the ablative of the thing wanted (but see chap. vii. 14, p. 126): as,—

Opus est mihi adjutore; or, *Adjutor opus est mihi*;—I need a helper.

13. Rule V.—The ablative expresses quality or property, when conjoined with an adjective: * as,—

Erat regia dignitate; he was of royal dignity.

Statūra fuit humili; he was of low stature.

14. Rule VI.—Price or amount is put in the ablative with verbs of buying, selling, valuing, hiring, fining, &c.: † as,—

Patriam auro vendidit; he sold his country for gold.

Multatus est pecunia; he was fined in a sum of money.

15. *Obs.* 1.—But the ablatives of certain words are used to express the price in an indefinite way: as, *Minimo*, for very little; *magno*, for much; *parvo*, for little, &c.

Obs. 2.—Under this head comes the ablative with *dignus*, *indignus*: as, *Dignus laude*, worthy of praise.

16. Rule VII.—The ablative is used with comparatives and superlatives to express excess or deficiency of measure: as,—

Multo major; greater by far.

17. Rule VIII.—The ablative is used with the comparative degree to indicate the object with which the comparison is instituted: as,—

Filia pulchrior matre; a daughter more beautiful than her mother.

18. When *quam* is used in comparisons, the second substantive is coupled to the first by it, and takes the same case: as,—

Filia pulchrior est quam mater; the daughter is more beautiful than her mother (is).

19. Rule IX.—The ablative denotes separation from, after verbs of removing, freeing, delivering, depriving, abstaining, abandoning: as,

Caesar castra loco movit; Caesar shifted his camp from the place.

Destiterunt hoc conatu; they abandoned this attempt.

20. Rule X.—Place-from-which is expressed in the ablative: as,—

Profectus est Athenis; he started from Athens.

* See chap. viii. 8, p. 128.

† See chap. viii. 12, p. 129.

21. Rule XI.—Place-where is expressed by the ablative, more especially in the names of towns or small islands, if the noun be of the third declension, or the plural number: * as,—

Mortuus est Carthagine; he died at Carthage.

Videbat se non tutum (esse) Argis; he saw that he was not safe at Argos.

22. Obs.—Many words not proper names of places come under this principle; e.g., *domus, rus, locus, dextra, laeva*: as,—

Proficiscens domo; starting from home.

Eo loco manere; to remain in that place.

Dextra; on the right hand.

23. Rule XII.—Time-when is put in the ablative: as,—

Quinto die; on the fifth day.

Trecentesimo anno; in the three hundredth year.

24. Rule XIII.—The ablative is used with the prepositions *a, ab, abs, &c.*: † as,—

A flumine; from the river.

25. Rule XIV.—*In, sub, and super*, govern the ablative when rest or position in or at is indicated; and *subter*, though rarely: ‡ as,—

Sacerdotes in arce invenit; he found priests in the citadel.

26. The “ablative absolute:” § as,—

Opere peracto, ludemus; our work being finished, we will play.

CHAPTER X.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. THE Infinitive Mood is a verbal substantive having only two cases, the nominative and the accusative. (The gerund supplies the other cases.)

2. Rule I.—One verb governs another in the infinitive.

Scio plerosque scripsisse; I know that most writers have recorded.

Vetuit id fieri; he forbade this to be done.

* See p. 129, 15.

† See p. 114, 4.

‡ See chap. vi. 10, p. 124.

§ This is usually called the Ablative Absolute—*i.e.*, a phrase in a sentence, and yet not dependent on any part of that sentence; which is absurd. There is an inversion of the syntax, it is true, but all cases of the so called abl. absolute may be referred either to “time is put in the abl.,” or to “cause, manner, and instrument.”

3. *Obs.*—After verbs signifying to *hope, threaten, promise*, the future infinitive is generally used in Latin where our idiom requires a present: as,—

Pollicitus est se negotium confecturum esse; he promised to finish the business.

4. **Rule II.**—The infinitive mood has its subject in the accusative: as,—

Pythia dixit, incepta prospera futura esse; the priestess said that their undertakings would be prosperous.

5. *Obs.*—When the adjective or substantive is joined with the infinitive to complete the predicate, it is put in the same case as the subject: as,—

Petrus cupit esse vir doctus; Peter desires to be a learned man.
Scio Petrum esse virum doctum; I know Peter to be a learned man.

CHAPTER XI.—THE SUPINES.

1. **Rule I.**—The supine in *-um* is used after verbs expressing or implying motion, to indicate the design of the motion: as,—

Delecti Delphos profecti sunt deliberatum; chosen men went to Delphi to consult (the oracle).

Misit legatos rogatum auxilium; he sent ambassadors to ask for help.

2. **Rule II.**—The supine in *-u* is simply an ablative of limitation,* and is used with adjectives, such as *turpis, facilis, utilis, &c.*; and the substantives, *fas, nefas, opus*: as,—

Mirabile dictu! wonderful to tell!

CHAPTER XII.—PARTICIPLES.

1. **PARTICIPLES** are adjectives in form, and, like adjectives, agree with their own substantives in gender, number, and case. (See chap. iii.) Participles are very often used in the construction called the ablative absolute (p. 32, 26), and in cases where the English language prefers a clause with a finite verb.

* See chap. ix. 10, p. 130.

2. But participles have two peculiarities;—(1.) They denote time; and, (2.) When transitive, they govern the same case as their verbs.

3. The nominative or accusative neuter of the gerundive is very often used impersonally with the parts of the verb *sum*, the name of the person by whom the action must be done being put in the dative: * as,—

Moriendum est omnibus; all must die,—*i.e.*, dying is (a necessity) to all.

4. The gerundive is very often used in agreement with a noun (in all cases except the nominative, and in all genders), instead of the gerund followed by the accusative: as,—

Ad eas res conficiendas; to complete these matters.

Gen. *Scribendae epistolae*, instead of *scribendi epistolam*; of writing a letter.

Dat. *Scribendae epistolae*, instead of *scribendo epistolam*; to or for writing a letter.

Acc. *Ad scribendam epistolam*, instead of *ad scribendum epistolam*; to write a letter.

Abl. *Scribenda epistola*, instead of *scribendo epistolam*; by writing a letter.

CHAPTER XIII.—THE GERUND. *

1. THE Gerund is a regular noun, wanting the nominative and vocative, and its cases are treated accordingly. *In use*, the infinitive and the gerund make up a perfect noun: thus,—

Nom. *Scribere est utile*; writing is useful.

Gen. *Ars scribendi est utilis*; the art of writing is useful.

Dat. *Charta scribendo est utilis*; paper is useful for writing.

Acc. { *Scribere disco*; I learn writing.
 { *Inter scribendum disco*; I learn during (or while) writing.

Abl. *Scribendo discimus*; we learn by writing.

* The dative of the person is often omitted: as, *Utendum est* (scil. *nobis*) *brevitate*; we should practise brevity.

2. But observe,—

- (a) That the genitive of the gerund is governed by substantives and adjectives, though rarely, if ever, by verbs.
- (b) That the dative and accusative are seldom used with an accusative case following. Thus we can say, *Scribendo* (ablative) *epistolas*, by writing letters; but rarely *Charta est utilis scribendo* (dative) *epistolas*, or, *ad scribendum epistolas*. In such cases the gerundive should be employed, and be made to agree with the substantive; as, *Charta est utilis scribendis epistolis*; or, *ad scribendas epistolas*.
- (c) The accusative gerund is only used with prepositions, and usually with *ad*, *inter*, and *ob*.
- (d) The ablative gerund is most commonly used as the ablative of the instrument or manner, and after the prepositions *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *in*; not with *sine*.

3. The gerund governs the same case as its verb: as,—

Scribendi epistolas; of writing letters.

Parcendo victis; by sparing the conquered.

CHAPTER XIV.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. THE Imperative Mood is used in principal clauses to express a command, a wish, an advice, or an exhortation.

Obs.—The imperative of *nolo* is often used with the infinitive of a verb, to give force to the command: as,—

Noli imputare mihi; don't think of imputing to me.

2. In counsels, commands, exhortations, or requests, the subjunctive mood is very often used in the third person for the imperative; and also in the second person, especially when used indefinitely: as,—

Aut bibat aut abeat; let him either drink or be off.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.*

CHAPTER XV.—PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

1. SINCE the Indicative Mood † is employed to represent a state or an action simply as a fact, either in an affirmative, or a negative, or an interrogative form, it is used,—

(a) In principal clauses stating what is a fact, or assumed to be a fact: as, *Tum Thracæ eas regiones tenebant*; the Thracians at that time possessed those parts. (b) In direct questions: ‡ as, *Quid agis?* what are you doing? *Quota hora est?* what o'clock is it?

2. Since the subjunctive mood is employed to represent a state or an action in a doubtful or contingent manner, it is found in those principal clauses which partake of this character. These are,—(1.) A wish, command, or exhortation: as, *Valeas*; may you be in good health: (farewell.) *Utinam possim!* would that I were able! *Dum vivimus vivamus*; whilst we live, let us live. (2.) A possibility: as, *Aliquis dicat*; some one may (possibly) say. (3.) A supposition: as, *Dies deficiat, si*; the time (I suppose) would fail me were I, &c. (4.) A concession: as, *Sint hæc falsa*; (I grant) this may be false. (5.) A question expressed doubtfully: as, *Quid agamus?* what can we do?

* On the nature of the Compound Sentence and its clauses, see chap. i., p. 117.

† With regard to the Tenses of the indicative mood observe, (1.) That the imperfect is sometimes used as a perfect (perf. Aorist); (2.) That the future is occasionally employed as an imperative; (3.) That the pluperfect is often found where we might expect the same tense of the subjunctive: as, *Truncus illapsus cerebro sustulerat*; the trunk of a tree falling on my cranium *would have* killed me, (had not, &c.)

‡ Direct questions (i.e., questions not dependent on any word or clause going before) are asked by interrogative particles (adverbs or conjunctions) *ne, nonne, num, utrum, an; quare, cur, quando, quomodo, ubi, &c.* Or, secondly, by pronouns; as, *quis, qui, qualis, quantus, equis, &c.*

1. Interrogative particles:—

(a) *Ne* simply asks for information: *Scribitne puer?* is the boy writing?

(b) *Nonne* expects the answer, Yes: *Nonne putas?* don't you think? (Yes.)

(c) *Num* expects the answer, No: *Num putas?* do you think? (No.)

(d) *Utrum* (uter, which of two) is used in double questions, followed by *an*; as, *Utrum nosmet moenibus defendemus, an obviam hostibus ibimus?* Whether shall we defend ourselves by our fortifications, or shall we go to meet the enemy?

2. Interrogative pronouns; as, *Quis hoc fecit?* who did this?—*Quid agis?* what are you doing?

For indirect questions, see chap. xxiii.

3. The Imperative Mood is used in principal clauses to express a command, a wish, an advice, or an exhortation : as,—

Aequam memento servare mentem ; remember to maintain an even mind.

Pasce capellas, et pōtum pastas age, et inter agendum occurrere capro caveto : feed the she-goats ; and drive them, when fed, to water ; and whilst driving them, beware of meeting the he-goat.

4. The infinitive is sometimes used in principal clauses, instead of the indicative. This is called the Historical Infinitive.

CHAPTER XVI.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

1. THE first step to be taken in analysing a Latin sentence, or in turning an English sentence into Latin, is to decide the character of each clause of the sentence. This is, in most cases, easily done by examining the first word* of the clause, whether it be a conjunction, a relative adverb, or a relative pronoun ; but the learner must remember that the same conjunctive word may express different ideas, and therefore introduce different kinds of clauses : thus *quum* may introduce either a temporal or a causal clause. Hence conjunctive words play an important part in subordinate clauses ; but the student must carefully guard against the too common error of supposing that the conjunctive word *governs* the mood. In all cases it is *the nature of the statement* which decides not only what mood is to be used, but also what conjunctive word must introduce the clause. It may be laid down, then, as a general rule that,—

2. In all subordinate clauses, in which the statement is represented as dependent on another statement, either as purpose, aim, consequence, condition, or imaginary comparison, the verb will be in the subjunctive mood.

3. It often happens that a *fact* is stated in a subordinate clause by a verb in the subjunctive mood. In such cases the *secondary*

* The characteristic word is, in Latin, sometimes projected into the clause, but very seldom further than the third place : as, *Illi, desperatis rebus, quum solvissent nares* ; for *quum illi, &c.*

nature of the clause, which is connected with the leading clause, so as to be necessary to its completeness, seems to throw a shade of indefiniteness over it: as,—

Accidit ut, &c., quum Miltiades floureret; it happened that, &c., when Miltiades flourished.

4. Subordinate clauses may be divided into *final, conditional, concessive, temporal, causal, relative, interrogative*.

CHAPTER XVII.—FINAL CLAUSES.

1. FINAL CLAUSES, expressing the purpose or result, are introduced by the conjunctions *ut, ne, quin, quo, quominus*, and the relative *qui*; and have their verbs in the subjunctive mood.

2. *Ut* or *ne* expresses a purpose: * as,—

Misit servum ad regem, ut ei nuntiaret; he sent a slave to the king, to tell him (*i.e.*, for the purpose of telling).

Themistocles angustias quaerebat, ne multitudine circumretur; Themistocles sought the straits, that he might not be surrounded by the large number (of ships).

Obs.—Hence verbs signifying to *ask, persuade, command, advise, strive, wish, &c.*, are usually followed by *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive.

3. *Ut* or *ne* expresses a consequence or a result: as,—

Adeo angusto mari conflavit, ut multitudo navium explicari non potuerit; he engaged in so narrow a sea, that (as a consequence) his multitude of ships could not be drawn out.

Obs.—Hence verbs of *fearing* are followed by *ut* or *ne* with the subjunctive; *ut*, to express the fear that a thing will *not* happen; *ne*, that it will.

4. *Quo* is sometimes used for *ut* to express a purpose, especially when the sentence contains a comparative; (*quo = ut eo*): as,—

Caesar castella communit, quo facilis Helvetios prohibere possit; Caesar erects forts in order that he may the more easily be able to keep off the Helvetii.

* A purpose is not expressed in Latin by the infinitive, but either (a) by *qui*, with the subjunctive; or (b) by *ut*, with the subjunctive; or (c) by the supine; or (d) by the future participle; or (e) by the gerund; or (f) by the gerundive; or (g) by *causa* or *gratia*, with the genitive.

5. *Quin* ("in what manner not," "but that," "but," "without,") is used after negative clauses: * as,—

Nemo est quin putet; there is no one but thinks.

Nemo dubitabat, quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum; no one doubted but that some written proposal of peace had been made.

Obs.—*Quin* is used,—(1.) After verbs of hindering, as *prohibeo*; (2.) After negative phrases, as *non est dubium, nemo dubitat, &c.*; (3.) After clauses expressing or implying a negative.

6. *Quominus*† is used (rather than *ne*) after verbs of hindering, preventing, opposing, &c.: as,—

Nihil impedit quominus hoc faciamus; nothing hinders us from doing this.

Obs.—*Quin* and *quominus* are sometimes interchangeable.

7. The relative pronoun expresses a purpose: as,—

Servum misit ad regem, qui ei nuntiaret; he sent a slave to the king to tell (*i.e.*, who should tell) him.

8. *Ut* and *ne* are sometimes used in elliptical expressions, where in English we might supply "granting that," or some such phrase: as,—

Nam, ut omittam Philippum; for, not to mention Philip.

CHAPTER XVIII.—CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

1. **CONDITIONAL CLAUSES**, expressing a condition or contingency, are introduced by *si, nisi, dum, dummodo, modo, &c.*

2. Conditional clauses have the verb in the indicative if the condition is represented as certain: as,—

Si vis, dabo tibi testes; if (*i.e.*, since) you wish, I will give you evidence.

3. Conditional clauses have the verb in the subjunctive if the condition is represented as uncertain‡ or doubtful: as,—

Si quid habeat, dubit; if he (*chance to*) have anything, he will give it.

* When *quin* asks a (direct) question, it is joined with the indicative: as, *Quin conscendimus equos?* why don't we mount our horses?

† *Quominus*, literally, "in what manner the less;" *i.e.*, "so that not," "from."

‡ This will always be the case when *dum, dummodo, and modo* mean "provided that."

CHAPTER XIX.—CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

1. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES, expressing a concession or admission, are introduced by such conjunctions as *etsi*, *quanquam*, *tametsi*, *licet* (which is properly a verb), *quamvis*, and sometimes *quum*.

2. Concessive clauses have the verb in the indicative when a fact is stated; *etsi*, *quanquam*, and *tametsi* are most common in this sense: as,—

Eripuit telum, etsi gladius erat subductus; he drew forth a weapon, though his sword had been abstracted.

3. Concessive clauses have the verb in the subjunctive when a mere possibility is expressed; *licet* and *quamvis* almost always, and *etiamsi* very often in this sense: as,—

Quamvis ille felix sit, tamen, &c.; though he be happy, yet, &c.

4. The comparative conjunctions, *velut*, *ac*, *si*, *quasi*, *tanquam* *si*, &c., when used concessively (“as if,” “as though,”) take the subjunctive, because necessarily implying a doubt: as,—

Quid testibus utor, quasi res dubia sit? why do I employ witnesses, as though the matter were doubtful.

CHAPTER XX.—TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

1. TEMPORAL CLAUSES (*i.e.*, clauses expressing time) are introduced by such conjunctions as *quum*, *postquam*, *simulac*, *quando*, *dum*, *donec*, *ubi*; and when indicating time, *and nothing else*, generally take the indicative: as,—

Eo postquam Caesar pervēnit; when (after that) Caesar arrived there.

Quum Caesar in Galliam venit; when Caesar came into Gaul.

Ipsē quoad potuit, restitit; he himself resisted as long as he could.

2. Temporal clauses take the subjunctive when the idea of concession is implied, or when time is expressed in a general way: as,—

Quum hæc ita sint; since these things are so.

3. Temporal clauses also take the subjunctive when, in historical narrative, an event or circumstance is regarded as the cause or occasion of a subsequent one : as,—

Delecti Delphos missi sunt, quum multi peterent societatem, &c. ; chosen men were sent to Delphi, when (*i.e.*, because) many were seeking a share, &c.

CHAPTER XXI.—CAUSAL CLAUSES.

1. CAUSAL CLAUSES (assigning a cause, or reason, or ground) are introduced by such conjunctive words as *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quum*, *quippe*, and occasionally *quando*.

2. These conjunctions are joined with the indicative when the writer states his own opinion, and represents it as the right one : as,—

Quoniam non est genus unum; since there is not one kind(only).
Quippe leve est; since it is a small matter.

3. *Obs.*—*Quippe* is used with the indicative when a reason is given ironically : as,—

Quippe vetor Fatis: since, forsooth, I am forbidden by the Fates.

4. The subjunctive is used when the writer repeats the opinion of another. or hints that the reason is not the right one : as,—

Accusatus est proditionis, quod discessisset; he was accused of treason, because (they said) he had retired.

5. *Quum*, when expressing the *cause*, takes the subjunctive : as,—
Quum sit in nobis prudentia; since (*i.e.*, because) there is wisdom in us.

Obs.—But *quum* may take the indicative when the reason is stated very strongly as a *fact*.

6. Causal clauses are also introduced by the relative pronoun. (See chap. xxii. 7.)

CHAPTER XXII.—RELATIVE CLAUSES.

1. RELATIVE CLAUSES are introduced by the relative pronouns, relative adverbs, or relative conjunctions.

2. Relative clauses take the indicative when a fact is stated distinctly : as,—

Nuntius, qui missus est; the messenger who was sent.

3. Relative clauses take the subjunctive when stating the sentiments of another : as,—

Helvetii comparaverunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent; the Helvetii prepared those things which were necessary (as they thought) for their departure.

4. The relative pronoun is followed by the subjunctive when the clause expresses a *purpose* (see chap. xvii. 7): as,—

Misit servum, qui regi nuntiaret; he sent a slave to tell the king.

5. The relative pronoun is followed by the subjunctive when the clause expresses a *result*, and when *qui* is equal to *ut ego, ut tu, ut is, &c.*, after *is, talis, tantus, dignus, indignus, idoneus, tam, ita, &c.* : as,—

Non is sum, qui (=ut ego) hoc faciam; I am not the man to do this,—(*i.e.*, I am not such [a one] who can do this.)

Dignus est, qui laudetur; he is worthy to be praised.

6. The relative pronoun is followed by the subjunctive when the clause expresses the *ground, reason, or cause, qui* being equal to *cur, quod, or quum* and a pronoun : as,—

Erras, qui censeas; you err, who think (*i.e.*, because you think.)

Male fecit Hannibal, qui Capuae hiemavit; Hannibal did wrong in wintering (because he wintered) at Capua.

Obs.—*Qui* is often strengthened by *quippe, ut, utpote*.

7. The relative is also followed by the subjunctive when an indefinite statement is made, especially with such phrases as *sunt qui, nemo est, nescio quis*; as,—

Sunt qui putent; there are persons who think.

Fuere qui crederent; there were persons who believed.

Obs.—But the indicative is often used after *sunt qui, &c.* (1.) When persons or things are spoken of in a very distinct way : as, *Fuere complures, qui profecti sunt*; there were many persons who (actually) started. (2.) In all senses by the poets and later prose writers : as, *Sunt quos juvat* (Hor.); there are persons whom it delights.

8. The relative pronoun is followed by the subjunctive when a condition or supposition is implied : as,—

Nihil bonum est, quod hominem non meliorem faciat; nothing is good, unless it makes (*i.e.*, which does not make) a man better.

CHAPTER XXIII.—INTERROGATIVE CLAUSES.

1. DIRECT questions belong to principal clauses. (See p. 136, note ‡.)

2. Indirect questions are those which depend on some word or sentence going before; they have the verb in the subjunctive: as,—

Dic, quid agas; tell me what you are doing.

Magna fuit contentio, utrum moenibus se defenderent, an obrum irent hostibus; there was an earnest discussion whether they should defend themselves by their walls, or whether they should go to meet the enemy.

3. *Obs. 1.*—In indirect questions *num* does not necessarily imply a negative.

Obs. 2.—When more than one alternative is suggested in indirect questions, the forms are as follows:—

| 1 | 2 | 3 |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>utrum</i> | <i>an</i> | <i>an</i> |
| <i>nē</i> | <i>nē</i> | <i>nē</i> |
| — | <i>nē</i> | <i>nē</i> |

CHAPTER XXIV.—SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN THE CLAUSES OF A COMPOUND SENTENCE.

1. WHEN co-ordinate clauses are connected by any of the co-ordinate conjunctions (*et, ac, atque, sed, aut, nec, &c.*), the verbs are generally in the same tense; but they often vary in tense when some peculiarity of time or of action is to be represented by one or more of them: as,—

Quum accessisset Lemnum, et vellet redigere incolus sub potestatem, et postulasset; when he *had* approached Lemnus, and *was wishing* to reduce the inhabitants to submission, and *had* demanded, &c.

2. When subordinate clauses are added to principal clauses, the general rule is,—

(a) That a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by a primary tense in the subordinate clause. In other words,—

| | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------|---|---|
| Present Future Present-perfect | } | are followed by | { | Present subjunctive, or Perfect subjunctive (for a completed action). |
|--------------------------------------|---|-----------------------|---|---|

- (b) That a historical tense in the principal clause is followed by a historical tense in the subordinate clause. In other words,—

| | | | | | |
|----------------|-------|----------|----|---|---------------------------------------|
| Imperfect | } are | followed | by | { | Imperfect subjunctive, or |
| Perfect-aorist | | | | | Pluperfect subjunctive (for an action |
| Pluperfect | | | | | completed at a prior time). |

Thus,—

| (a) | PRINCIPAL. | SUBORDINATE. | PRINCIPAL. | SUBORDINATE. |
|-----|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| { | <i>Scio</i> | <i>quid agas</i> | = I know | what you are doing. |
| { | <i>Scio</i> | <i>quid egeris</i> | = I know | what you have done. |
| { | <i>Cognoscam</i> | <i>quid agas</i> | = I shall discover | what you are doing. |
| { | <i>Cognoscam</i> | <i>quid egeris</i> | = I shall discover | what you have done. |
| { | <i>Cognovi</i> | <i>quid agas</i> | = I have discovered | what you are doing. |
| { | <i>Cognovi</i> | <i>quid egeris</i> | = I have discovered | what you have done. |
| (b) | | | | |
| { | <i>Sciebam</i> | <i>quid ageres</i> | = I knew | what you were doing. |
| { | <i>Sciebam</i> | <i>quid egisses</i> | = I knew | what you had done. |
| { | <i>Cognovi</i> | <i>quid ageres</i> | = I discovered | what you were doing. |
| { | <i>Cognovi</i> | <i>quid egisses</i> | = I discovered | what you had done. |
| { | <i>Cognoveram</i> | <i>quid ageres</i> | = I had discovered | what you were doing. |
| { | <i>Cognoveram</i> | <i>quid egisses</i> | = I had discovered | what you had done. |

3. When a subordinate clause depends on an infinitive mood, the tense of its verb is regulated, not by the infinitive, but by the verb on which the infinitive depends: as,—

Dimicare utile arbitratur, priusquam Lacedaemonii subsidio veniant; he thinks it advantageous to fight before the Lacedaemonians come to help them.

Dimicare utile arbitrabatur, priusquam Lacedaemonii subsidio venirent; he thought it advantageous to fight before the Lacedaemonians should come to help them.

4. The above rules for the sequence of tenses are often violated when some specialty of time or of action is to be indicated by the verb of the subordinate clause: as,—

Renuntiat societatem nisi Alcibiadem tradidisset; he threatens to break off friendly relations unless he should have (at an after time) delivered up Alcibiades.

5. *Historical Present*.—A present tense is often used by historians where we should expect a past; and as such presents are virtually past tenses, they are often followed by a verb in the past tense of the subjunctive: as,—

Decem praetores creant, qui exercitui praeessent; they elect ten generals to command the army.

6. The present subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause after a past tense when the action is represented as continuing: as,—

Hujus vitia emendata sunt adeo virtutibus, ut nemo anteferatur; his vices were to such an extent counterbalanced by merits, that no one is *up to this day* preferred to him.

7. The perfect subjunctive is often used (where we might expect the imperfect), if the subordinate clause states a historical fact distinctly: as,—

Tanto plus valuerunt Athenienses, ut decempleximum numerum hostium profligarint; the Athenians excelled so much that they put to flight ten times the (i.e., *their own*) number of the enemy.

[Nepos often uses the perfect subjunctive where the imperfect would be more regular.]

8. When the action or state indicated by the verb of the subordinate clause is represented as over before the action of the principal verb begins, the verb of the subordinate clause must be in the pluperfect*: as,—

Putavit se Graccos sub sua retenturum esse potestate, si amicis suis oppida tuenda tradidisset; he thought that he would keep the Greeks in his power if he were to hand over (*literally*, should have handed over) the towns to their friends to guard them.

Quum venisset, dixit; when he came (*i.e.*, had come), he said.

9. The future perfect (indicative) is often used in the subordinate clause to indicate that the action of the dependent verb must be over before that of the principal verb begins: as,—

Faciam, si mihi fidem dederis; I shall do it, if you give (*literally*, shall have given) me your promise.

In English we usually employ a present or a perfect in such cases.

* This must be carefully attended to, since in English we do not commonly use a pluperfect in such cases.

CHAPTER XXV.

RUDDIMAN'S RULES.

IN addition to the foregoing summary of Syntax, it has been judged advisable to append Ruddiman's excellent Rules, which for very many years have been deservedly popular among Scottish teachers; and which, though defective in several points, have the very great merit of being easily committed to memory. The notes to the Rules have been given only in part, as the most important facts which they state have already been laid down in the Syntax.

PART I.—CONCORD.

I.—An adjective agrees with its own substantive in gender, number, and case: as,—

Vir bonus; a good man.

Femina pulchra; a beautiful woman.

Dulce pomum; a sweet apple.

II.—A verb agrees with its subject in number and person: as,—

Ego lego; I read.

Tu scribis; you write.

Praeceptor docet; the master teaches.

Note.—A collective noun, though singular, may have a verb in the plural: as,
Multitudo convenerant; the multitude had assembled.

III.—The infinitive mood has an accusative before it: as,—

Gaudco te valere; I am glad that you are well.

IV.—Esse has the same case after it that it has before it: as,—

Petrus cupit esse vir doctus; Peter desires to be a learned man.

Scio Petrum esse virum doctum; I know that Peter is a learned man.

V.—The relative qui, quae, quod, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person: as,—

Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur; the man is wise who speaks little.

Ego qui scribo; I who write.

VI.—Two or more substantives singular, connected by the conjunctions et, ac, atque, &c., generally have a verb, adjective, or relative plural: as,—

Petrus et Joannes qui sunt docti; Peter and John who are learned.

- VII.—Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case: as,
Cicero orator; Cicero the orator.
Urbs Edinburgum; the city Edinburgh.
N.B.—The same occurs even when a substantive or passive verb is used: as,
Ego sum discipulus; I am a scholar. *Tu vocaris Joannes*; you are called John.
-

PART II.—GOVERNMENT.

(1.) GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

- VIII.—One substantive governs, in the genitive, another signifying a different thing: as,—

Amor Dei; the love of God.
Lex naturæ; the law of nature.

- IX.—But if the latter substantive have an adjective signifying praise, dispraise, or any sort of distinction, joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or ablative: as,—

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*; a man of great wisdom.
Puer probæ indolis, or *probâ indole*; a boy of a good disposition.

- X.—An adjective in the neuter gender, without a substantive, governs the genitive: as,—

Multum pecuniæ; much money.
Quid rei est? what is the matter?

- XI.—Opus and usus signifying "need," govern the ablative of the thing wanted: as,—

Celeri opus est auxilio; there is need of speedy help.
Nunc viribus usus est (vobis); now you have need of strength.

(2.) GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

- XII.—Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive: as,—

Avidus gloriæ; desirous of glory.
Ignarus fraudis; ignorant of fraud.
Memor beneficiõrum; mindful of favours.

- XIII.—Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural: as,—

Aliquis philosophõrum; some one of the philosophers.
Senior fratrum; the elder of the brothers.
Quis nostrum; which of us.
Una Musarum; one of the Muses.

XIV.—Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative: * as,—

Utilis bello; profitable for war.

Similis patri; like his father.

XV.—Verbal adjectives in *-bilis* and *-dus* govern the dative: as,
Amandus, or *amabilis omnibus*; to be beloved by all men.

XVI.—Substantives denoting measure are put in the accusative: as,—

Columna sexaginta pedes alta; a pillar sixty feet high.

XVII.—The comparative degree governs the ablative of the object with which comparison is instituted: as,—

Dulcior melle; sweeter than honey.

Praestantior auro; better than gold.

XVIII.—The adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *praeditus*, *captus*, and *frētus*; also *nātus*, *sātus*, *ortus*, *ēditus*, and the like, govern the ablative: as,—

Dignus honōre; worthy of honour.

Praeditus virtūte; endued with virtue.

Contentus parvo; content with little.

Captus oculis; blind.

Frētus viribus; trusting to his strength.

XIX.—Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative: as,—

Plenus irae, or *irā*; full of anger.

Inops ratiōnis, or *ratiōne*; void of reason.

(3.) GOVERNMENT OF VERBS (PERSONAL).

XX.—Sum, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive: as,—

Est regis punire rebelles; it belongs to the king to punish rebels.

Militum est suo duci parere; it is the duty of soldiers to obey their general.

XXI.—A possessive adjective, as *meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, *regium*, *humanum*, &c., may be substituted for the genitive: as,—

Tuum est id procurāre; it is your duty to manage that.

Humanum est errare; it is natural to man to err.

* See Syntax, chap. vii. §., p. 125.

XXII.—*Miserereor*, *miseresco*, and *satāgo*, govern the genitive: as,

Miserere civium tuorum; take pity on your countrymen.
Satāgit rerum suarum; he is busy with his own affairs.

XXIII.—*Est* taken for *habeo* (to have) governs the dative of a person: as,—

Est mihi liber; I have a book.
Sunt mihi libri; I have books.

XXIV.—*Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing: as,—

Est mihi voluptati; it is (*i.e.*, it brings) a pleasure to me.

XXV.—Verbs signifying advantage or disadvantage govern the dative: as,—

Fortuna favet fortibus; Fortune favours the brave.
Nemini nocet; do hurt to no man.

Under this rule are comprehended verbs signifying,—

1. To profit and hurt: as, *commodo*, *placeo*, *noceo*, *officio*, &c. But *laedo* and *offendo* govern the accusative.
2. To favour or help, and the contrary: as, *favco*, *gratulo*, *ignosco*, *auxilior*, *invideo*, *parco*, &c. But *juvo* governs the accusative.
3. To command, obey, serve, and resist: as, *impéro*, *parco*, *obedio*, *servio*, *resisto*, &c. But *jubeo* governs the accusative.
4. To threaten or to be angry with: as, *minor*, *indignor*, *irascor*, &c.
5. To trust: as *fido*, *confido*, *credo*; also, *diffido*, *despéro*.
6. Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene*, and *male*: as, *satisfacio*, *benefacio*, *maledico*, &c.
7. *Sum*, and its compounds, except *possum*: as, *adsum*, *prosum*, &c.
8. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions: *ad*, *ante*—*in*, *inter*—*post*, *prae*—*sub*, *super*—*cum* (*con*), and *ob*: as, *adsto*, *antecello*, *consto*, &c.

XXVI.—Transitive verbs govern the accusative: as,—

Ama Deum; love God.
Reverere parentes; reverence your parents.

XXVII.—*Recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliscor*, govern the accusative, or genitive: as,—

Recordor lectiōnis, or *lectiōnem*; I remember my lesson.
Obliscor injuriæ, or *injuriam*; I forget an injury.

XXVIII.—Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of the crime or thing: as,—

Arguit me furti; he accuses me of theft.
Monet me officii; he puts me in mind of my duty.

XXIX.—Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative: *as*,—

Compāro Virgiliū Homēro; I compare Virgil to Homer.
Eripuit me morti; he rescued me from death.

XXX.—Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the first of a person, and the second of a thing: *as*,—

Posce Deum veniam; beg pardon of God.
Docuit me grammaticam; he taught me grammar.

XXXI.—Verbs of filling, loading, binding, depriving, clothing, and some others, govern the accusative and ablative: *as*,—

Implet patēram mero; he fills the bowl with wine.
Onērat navem auro; he loads the ship with gold.

XXXII.—The passives of such active verbs as govern two cases retain the latter case: *as*,—

Accūsor furti; I am accused of theft.
Doccor grammaticam; I am taught grammar.
Patēra implētur mero; the bowl is filled with wine.

XXXIII.—Substantives denoting price are put in the ablative: *as*,

Emi librum duōbus assibus; I bought a book for two asses (*i. e.*, coins).
Vendidit hic auro patriam; this man sold his country for gold.

XXXIV.—These (adjectival) genitives, *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minōris*, are excepted: *as*,—

Quanti constitit? how much cost it?
Asse et pluris; an as and more.

XXXV.—Verbs of valuing govern the accusative with such genitives as these: *magni*, *parvi*, *nihili*, &c.: *as*,—

Aestīmo te magni; I value you much.

XXXVI.—Verbs of plenty and scarceness generally govern the ablative: *as*,—

Abundat divitiis; he abounds in riches.
Caret omni culpā; he is free from every fault.

XXXVII.—*Utor*, *abūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, *vescor*, govern the ablative: *as*,—

Utītur fraude; he uses deceit.
Abutītur libris; he abuses books.

Note 1.—Also the verbs *nitor*, *gaudeo*, *muto*, *dono*, *muncro*, *comunico*, *victito*, *beo*, *ſdo*, *impertior*, *dignor*, *nascor*, *creor*, *afficio*, *consto*, *labōro*, (I am ill), *proſequeror*, &c.; but the ablative after most of these may be referred to Rule LV.

Note 2.—*Potior*, *fungor*, *vescor*, *epītor*, and *pascor*, sometimes govern the accusative: *as*, *Potiri summam imperii.*—*NER.* *Potior* sometimes governs the genitive: *as*, *Potiri regni.*—*CIC.*

(4.) GOVERNMENT OF VERBS (IMPERSONAL).

XXXVIII.—Impersonal verbs govern the dative: as,—

Expēdit rēpublicae; it is profitable for the state.

Licet nēmīni peccāre; no man is allowed to sin.

XXXIX.—Rēfert and interest govern the genitive: as,—

Rēfert patris; it concerns my father.

Intērest omnium; it is the interest of all.

XL.—But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are used instead of the genitives of the personal pronouns: as,—

Non mea rēfert; it does not concern me.

XLI.—These five—*misēret, poenītet, pudet, taedet, and piget*—govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of the object: as,—

Misēret me tui; I pity you.

Poenītet me peccāti; I repent of my sin.

XLII.—These four—*deceat, delectat, juvat, and oportet*—govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive: as,—

Delectat me studēre; it delights me to study.

Non dēcet te rixāri; it does not become you to scold.

XLIII.—The principal agent, after a passive verb, is put in the ablative, with the preposition *a* or *ab*; and sometimes in the dative: as,—

Mundus gubernātur a Deo; the world is governed by God.

Neque cernitur ulli; nor is he seen by any.

(5.) GOVERNMENT OF THE INFINITIVE, PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS,
AND SUPINES.

XLIV.—One verb governs another in the infinitive: as,—

Cupio discēre; I desire to learn.

Note.—The infinitive is sometimes governed by adjectives.

XLV.—Participles, gerunds, and the first supine, govern the case of their verbs: as,—

Amans virtūtem; loving virtue.

By Rule XXVI.

Carens fraude; wanting guile.

By Rule XXXVI.

XLVI.—The gerundive in *-dum* of the nominative case with the verb *est* governs the dative: as,—

Vivendum est mihi recte; I must live well.

Moriendum est omnibus; all must die.

XLVII.—The gerund in *-di* is governed by substantives and adjectives: as,—

Tempus legendi; time of reading.

Cupidus discendi; desirous to learn.

See Rules VIII. and XII.

XLVIII.—The gerund in *-do* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness: as,—

Charta utilis scribendo; paper useful for writing.

See Rule XIV.

XLIX.—The gerund in *-dum* of the accusative case is governed by the preposition *ad*, or *inter*: as,—

Promptus ad audiendum; ready to hear.

Attentus inter docendum; attentive in time of teaching.

See Rule LXIX.

Note.—It is sometimes governed by *ante*, *circa*, or *ob*: as, *Ante domandum*.

—VIRG.

L.—The gerund in *-do* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*: as,—

Poena a peccando absterret; punishment frightens from sinning.

See Rules LXX. and LXXI.

LI.—The gerund in *-do* of the ablative case is used without a preposition, as the ablative of manner, or cause: as,—

Memoria excolendo augētur; the memory is improved by exercising it.

Defessus sum ambulando; I am wearied with walking.

See Rule LV.

LII.—Gerunds governing the accusative are varied by the participles in *-dus*, which agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case: as,—

GERUNDS.

Petendum est pacem.

Tempus petendi pacem.

Ad petendum pacem.

A petendo pacem.

PARTICIPLES.

Petenda est pax.

Tempus petendae pacis.

Ad petendam pacem.

A petenda pace.

Note.—The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative are never changed into the participles, except those of *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*: as, *Ad haec utenda idonea est.*—TER.

LIII.—The supine in -um is used after verbs expressing or implying motion: as,—

Abiit dcambulātum; he has gone to walk.

LIV.—The supine in -u is put after an adjective: as,—

Facīle dictu; easy to tell, or, to be told.

I.—THE CAUSE, MANNER, AND INSTRUMENT.

LV.—The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative: as,—

Palleo metu; I am pale for fear.

Fecit suo more; he did it after his own way.

Scribo calāmo; I write with a pen.

II.—PLACE.

LVI.—In or at a place is put in the genitive if the noun be of the first or second declension, and singular number: as,—

Vixit Romae; he lived at Rome.

Mortuus est Londīni; he died at London.

Note.—*Humi, militiæ, and belli*, are also used in the genitive: as, *Humi nascentia fraga.*—VIRG.

LVII.—In or at a place is put in the ablative if the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number: as,—

Habitat Carthagine; he dwells at Carthage.

Studuit Parisiis; he studied at Paris.

LVIII.—To a place is put in the accusative: as,—

Venit Romam; he came to Rome.

Profectus est Athēnas; he went to Athens.

LIX.—From or by (through) a place is put in the ablative: as,—

Discessit Corintho; he departed from Corinth.'

Laodicēā iter faciēbat; he went by Laodicea.

LX.—*Domus, rus, and some other words, are construed the same way as names of towns: as,—*

Manet domi; he stays at home.

Domum revertitur; he returns home.

Vivit rure, or ruri; he lives in the country.

Rediit rure; he has returned from the country.

LXI.—To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is generally added: as,—

Natus in Italiâ, in Latio, in urbe, &c.; born in Italy, in Latium, in a city, &c.

Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in urbem, &c.; he has gone to Italy, to Latium, to a city, &c.

See Rules LXIX., LXX., LXXI., and LXXII.

LXII.—Substantives denoting space or distance are put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative: as,—

Urbs distat triginta millia (or millibus) passuum; the city is thirty miles distant.

III.—TIME.

LXIII.—Substantives denoting a point of time are put in the ablative: as,—

Venit horâ tertîâ; he came at the third hour.

LXIV.—Substantives denoting continuance of time are put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative: as,—

Mansit paucos dies; he stayed a few days.

Sex mensibus abfuit; he was absent six months.

LXV.—A substantive and a participle, whose case depends upon no other word, are put in the ablative absolute:* as,—

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebrae; the sun rising, or, when the sun rises, darkness flies away.

Opere peracto, ludēmus; our work being finished, or, when our work is finished, we will play.

CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

I.—ADVERBS.

LXVI.—Adverbs are joined to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: as,—

Bene scribit; he writes well.

Fortiter pugnans; fighting bravely.

Satis bene; well enough.

* See Note §, p. 132.

LXVII.—Some adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive: as,—

Pridie illius diēi; the day before that day.

Ubique gentium; everywhere.

Satis est verbōrum; there is enough of words.

LXVIII.—Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives: as,—

Omnium elegantissime loquitur; he speaks the most elegantly of all.
By Rule XIII.

Vivere convenienter naturae; to live agreeably to nature. By Rule XIV.

II.—PREPOSITIONS.

LXIX.—The prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c., govern the accusative: as,—

Ad patrem; to the father.

LXX.—The prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c., govern the ablative: as,—

A patre; from the father.

Note.—*Tenus* sometimes governs the genitive: as, *Crurum tenus*.

LXXI.—The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative when motion to a place is signified: as,—

Eo in scholam; I go into the school.

Sub moenia tendit; he goes under the walls.

Incidit super agmina; it fell upon the troops.

LXXII.—When motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative: as,—

Sedeo or discurro in scholā; I sit, or, run up and down, in the school.

Sedens super arma; sitting above the arms.

Subter litore; beneath the shore.

LXXIII.—A preposition often governs the same case in composition that it does out of it: as,—

Adcāmus scholam; let us go to the school.

Excāmus scholā; let us go out of the school.

III.—INTERJECTIONS.

LXXIV.—The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, govern the vocative, and sometimes the accusative: *as*,—

O formōse puer! O fair boy!

Heu me misērum! ah, wretch that I am!

LXXV.—*Hei* and *vae* govern the dative: *as*,—

Hei mihi! ah me!

Vae vobis! woe to you!

IV.—CONJUNCTIONS.

LXXVI.—The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple independent words or clauses, and co-ordinate dependencies of the same word: *as*,—

Honōra patrem et matrem; honour your father and mother.

Nec scribit nec legit; he neither writes nor reads.

LXXVII.—*Ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utīnam*, and *dummōdo*, are generally joined to the subjunctive: *as*,—

Accidit ut terga vertērent; it happened that they turned their backs.

Utīnam sapēres; I wish you were wise.

APPENDIX.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

NOTE.—The following Rules will guide the pupil to the principal classes of words and of terminations belonging to the different Genders. The more common Exceptions are also given; but the limits of the book forbid an exhaustive chapter on this subject. For more complete lists consult the Larger Grammar belonging to this Series.

I. GENERAL RULES.—GENDER DECIDED BY THE MEANING.

I.—The names of male beings are masculine: as, *Pātēr*, father; *Vīr*, man; *Caesār*, Caesar; *Taurus*, bull.

II.—The names of rivers, winds, and months are masc. (*flūvīūs*, *ventūs*, and *mensis* being masc.): as, *Tibērīs*, the Tiber; *Garunna*, the Garonne; *Aquilo*, the north wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

Exc.—The following river-names are feminine:—*Atlā*, *Albūlā*, *Mātrōna*, *Styx*, and *Lēthē*.

III.—The names of many mountains are masc. (*mons* being masc.): as, *Othrys*. But they generally follow the gender of the termination: as, *Atlās*, m.; *Idā*, f.; *Sōrāctē*, n.

IV.—The names of female beings are fem.: as, *Mātēr*, mother; *Sōrōr*, sister; *Mūliēr*, woman.

V.—Most of the names of countries, islands, towns, trees, and precious stones are fem.: as, *Aegyptūs*; *Sālāmīs*; *Rhōdus*; *Týrūs*; *Quercūs*, an oak; *Smāragdūs*, an emerald.

Exc. 1.—Names of countries ending in *-um* or *-a* (plur.) are neut.: as, *Lātium*; *Bactrā*.

Exc. 2.—Names of towns in *-i*, *-ōrum*, are masc.: as, *Phīlipp-i*, *-ōrum*.

Exc. 3.—Those in *-um*, *-e* (gen. *-is*), *-ur*, *-on*, and *-a*, *-orum* (plur.), are neut.: as, *Tārentum*; *Caer-e*, *-is*; *Tibur*; *Ilion*; *Leuctr-ā*, *-ōrum*.

Exc. 4.—Several in *-o* are masc.: as, *Sulmo*, *Vesontio*, *Narbo*, *Hippo*, &c.

VI.—Nouns which may denote either the male or the female are said to be of common gender: as, *Cīvēs*, a citizen; *Pārens*, a parent; *Conjux*, a wife or husband; *Dux*, a leader.

II. SPECIAL RULES.—GENDER DECIDED BY THE TERMINATION.

FIRST DECLENSION.

I.—Nouns in *-ǎ* and *-ě* are fem.; in *-ās* and *-ēs*, masc.: as, *Mensǎ*, a table; *Ěpitǔmē*, an abridgment; *Aeněās*; *Anchīsēs*. Those in *-e*, *-as*, and *-es*, are Greek.

Exc. 1.—Names of men, and their designations, are masc.: as, *Cinna*, Cinna; *Pětělǎ*, a poet; *Aurigǎ*, a coach driver; *Nautǎ*, a sailor.

Exc. 2.—Names of rivers in *-a* are masc.: as, *Sěquǎnǎ*, the Seine. But see above, Rule II., with Exception, p. 157.

SECOND DECLENSION.

II.—Nouns ending in *-ůs*, *-ěr*, and *-ěr* are masc.: as, *Ĥortůs*, a garden; *Āgěr*, a field; *Věr*, a man.

Exc. 1.—Names of towns and of trees in *-us* are generally fem. (see above, Rule V., p. 157): as, *Cōrinthus*, Corinth; *Pōpůtus*, a poplar tree.

Exc. 2.—The following words are fem., viz.: *Alvůs*, the belly; *Cůlůs*, a distaff (rarely m.); *Hůmůs*, the ground; *Vannůs*, a corn fan.

Exc. 3.—Greek words in *-us* retain their Greek fem. gender: as, *Měthodůs*, a method; *Carbāsůs*, (in the sing.), fine flax.

Exc. 4. Three nouns in *-us* are neut., viz.: *Věrůs*, poison; *Pělǎgůs*, the sea; and *Vulgůs* (also m.), the common people.

III.—Nouns ending in *-um* are neut.: as, *Mǎlum*, an apple.

THIRD DECLENSION.

A.—Words Ending in a Vowel.

IV.—Nouns in *-ǎ* and *-ě* are neut.: as, *Pěmǎ*, a poem; *Mǎřě*, the sea.

V.—Nouns ending in *-o* are masc.: as, *Sermo*, conversation; *Ordo*, order; *Cardo*, a hinge; *Margo*, a margin.

Exc. 1.—Abstract nouns ending in *-do* and *-io* are fem.; also those in *-go*: as, *Magnitudo*, greatness; *Cūpido*, desire, (also m., as a proper name); *Largitio*, bribery; *Virgo*, a maiden. Also, *Ratio*, reason; *Oratio*, speech; *Legio*, a legion; *Regio*, a district; *Cūro*, flesh.

Exc. 2.—Some nouns in *-o*, though names of towns, are masc. (See p. 157, V., *Exc. 4.*)

VI.—Nouns ending in *-y* are neut.: as, *Misy* (gen. *m^ssyis*, or *m^ssyos*), vitriol.

B.—Words Ending in a Consonant.

I.—MASCULINE TERMINATIONS.

VII.—ER. Nouns ending in *-er* are generally masc.: as, *Ventěr*, the belly; *Carcěr*, a prison.

Exc. 1.—Many in *-er* are neut.: as, *Cādūver*, a corpse; *Pāpāver*, poppy; *Věr*, spring; *Ĥěr*, a journey.

Exc. 2.—These are fem. (see Rule IV., p. 157) *Linter*, a boat; *Mūtier*, a woman; *Māter*, a mother.

VIII.—ES. Nouns in *-es*, which have a syllable more in the gen. than in the nom. (i.e., "increasing nouns,") are masc.: as, *Pēs*, *pēd-īs*, a foot; *Pārīēs*, *pārīētis*, a wall.

Exc.—The following are fem.: (*Compēs*), *compēdis*, a fetter; *Sēgēs*, *sējētis*, a crop; *Mercēs*, *mercēdis*, a reward; *Quēs*, *quētis*, rest, and some others.

IX.—OR. Nouns in *-or* are generally masc.: as, *Hōnōr*, honour; *Lābōr*, toil.

Exc. 1.—Several in *-or*, gen. *-ōris*, are neut.: as, *Ador*, (*-ōris*) spelt; *Aequōr*, the sea-plain; *Marmōr*, marble. So also, *Cōr*, *cord-īs*, the heart.

Exc. 2.—These are fem. by Rules V. and IV., p. 157: *Arbōr*, a tree; *Sōrōr*, sister; *Uxor*, wife.

X.—OS. Nouns in *-os* are generally masc.: as, *Mōs*, gen. *mōris*, custom; *Flōs*, *flōris*, a flower.

Exc. 1.—These are fem.: *Cōs*, *cōtis*, a whetstone; and *Dōs*, *dōtis*, a dowry.

Exc. 2.—These are neut.: *Os*, *ōris*, the mouth; and *Ossis*, *ossis*, a bone.

XI.—ON. Greek words in *-on* are masc. (but a few are fem.): as, *Babylon*, *Babylōn-īs*.

II.—FEMININE TERMINATIONS.

XII.—AS. Nouns in *-as* are fem.: as, *Actās*, *actātis*, age; *Civitas*, a state.

Exc. 1.—Some are masc.: as, *Ās*, *assis*, an as (a Roman coin); *Ēlēphās*, an elephant; *Gīgās*, a giant; *Mās*, *māris*, a male; *Vās*, *vādīs*, a surety. *Ānās*, a duck, is common.

Exc. 2.—The following are neut.: *Vās*, *vāsīs*, a vessel; *Fās*, and *Nēfās*.

XIII.—AUS. Nouns in *-aus* are fem. They are, *Laus*, *laudīs*, praise; and *Fraus*, *fraudīs*, deceit.

XIV.—ES. Nouns in *-es*, which do not increase, are fem.: as, *Cacēdēs*, *cacēdis*, slaughter; *Clādēs*, *clādīs*, defeat.

Exc. 1.—One word is common, viz.: *Pātumbēs*, a wood-pigeon.

Exc. 2.—The names of rivers in *-es* are masc. by Rule II., p. 157: also, *Ferrēs*, a boar.

XV.—IS. Nouns in *-is* are fem.: as, *Nāvīs*, a ship; *Vallis*, a valley; *Cuspīs*, *cuspidīs*, a point; *Lis*, *lītis*, a law-suit.

Exc. 1.—Many are masc.: as, *Amnis*, a river; *Arīs*, an axle; *Collīs*, a hill; *Crīnīs*, hair; *Enīs*, a sword; *Fascīs*, a bundle; *Finīs*, an end, (also f. in sing.): *Fūnīs*, a rope; *Fustīs*, a club; *Ignīs*, fire; *Lāpīs*, *lāpītis*, a stone; *Mensīs*, a month; *Orbīs*, a circle; *Pānīs*, bread; *Piscīs*, a fish; *Pulvērīs*, *pulvērīs*, dust; *Postīs*, a post; *Sanguīs*, *sanguinīs*, blood; *Unguīs*, a nail. Also a few others of rare occurrence.

Exc. 2.—Some are common: as, *Cūnīs*, a dog; *Anguīs*, a snake; *Corbīs*, a basket; *Clūnīs*, a buttock.

XVI.—X. Nouns in *-x* are generally fem.: as, *Pax*, *pācis*, peace; *Nex*, *nēcīs*, death; *Rādix*, *rādīcis*, a root; *Nox*, *noctīs*, night; *Lex*, *lēgis*, a law; *Vox*, *vōcis*, a voice; *Arx*, *arcīs*, a citadel.

Exc. 1.—Most of those in *-ex* are masc.: as, *Grex*, *grēgis*, a flock.

Exc. 2.—The following, with a few others, are masc.: *Cūlix*, a cup; *Fornix*, an arch; *Trādūx*, a vine-branch.

XVII.—Nouns ending in -s, preceded by a consonant, are generally fem.: as, *Urbs*, a city; *Hicms*, winter; *Daps, dāpis*, a feast; *Gens*, a race; *Mens*, the mind; *Frons, frontis*, the forehead; *Frons, frondis*, a leaf; *Glans, glandis*, an acorn; *Ars, artis*, art, skill.

Exc.—The following, with a few others, are masc.: *Pons*, a bridge; *Fons*, a fountain; *Mons*, a mountain; *Dens*, a tooth; *Oriens*, the east; *Torrentus*, a torrent.

III.—NEUTER TERMINATIONS.

XVIII.—C. Nouns ending in -c are neut.: as, *Lac, lactis*, milk; *Ālēc, ālēcis*, pickle.

XIX.—L. Nouns ending in -l are neut.: as, *Mēl, mellis*, honey; *Ānīmāl*, an animal.

Exc.—The following are masc.: *Consul*, a consul; *Sol*, the sun; *Sāl*, salt; *Māgil*, a mullet; *Pāgil*, a boxer.

XX.—N. Nouns in -n are neut.: as, *Carměn, carmēnīs*, a poem.

Exc.—These are masc.: *Pectēn, pectēnīs*, a comb; *Flāmen*, a priest; *Tībēn*, a flute-player; *Cornācen*, a horn-blower, &c.

XXI.—AR. Nouns in -ar are neut.: as, *Calcar*, a spur.

Exc.—One word is masc., viz.: *Lār*, a household god.

XXII.—UR. Nouns in -ur are neut.: as, *Fulgūr*, lightning; *Rōbūr, rōbūrīs*, strength.

Exc.—The following are masc.: *Fūr*, a thief; *Fūrīs*, a vulture; *Astūr*, a hawk; *Turtūr*, a turtle-dove; and *Furfūr*, bran.

XXIII.—US. Nouns in -us are neut.: as, *Vulnūs, vulnērīs*, a wound; *Corpūs, corpōrīs*, a body; *Jūs, jūrīs*, law.

Exc. 1.—Two are masc.: *Lēpūs, lepōrīs*, a hare; and *Mūs, murīs*, a mouse.

Exc. 2.—These are common: *Sūs*, a pig; and *Grūs*, a crane.

Exc. 3.—The following are fem.: *Jūventūs, juventūtīs*, youth; *Pālūs, palūdīs*, a marsh; *Pēcūs, pecūdīs*, cattle; *Sālūs, sālūtīs*, safety; *Sēnectūs, sēnectūtīs*, old age; *Servītūs*, bondage; *Tellūs, tellūrīs*, the earth; and *Virtūs, virtūtīs*, virtue.

XXIV.—T. Nouns in -t are neut.: as, *Cāpūt, cāpītīs*, the head.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

XXV.—US. Nouns in -us are masc.: as, *Fructūs*, fruit; *Grādūs*, a step.

Exc.—The following are fem.: *Ācūs*, a needle; *Ānūs*, an old woman; *Dōmūs*, a house; *Idūs*, (pl.), the ides of a month; *Mānūs*, the hand; *Porticūs*, a porch; *Tribūs*, a tribe; and (by Rule IV., p. 157), *Nūrūs*, a daughter-in-law; and *Socrūs*, a mother-in-law.

XXVI.—U. Nouns in -ū are neut.: as, *Gelū*, frost; *Cornū*, a horn.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

XXVII.—ES. Nouns in -ēs are fem.: as, *Rēs*, a matter.

Exc.—The following are excepted, viz.: *Dīēs* (sing.), m. or f.; *Dīēs* (plur.), m.; *Meridīēs*, mid-day, m.

CONJUGATION * OF VERBS

MORE OR LESS IRREGULAR IN THE PERFECT AND SUPINE.

I.—THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

The regular forms are -āvi and -ātum, like *Āmo, ām-āvī, āmāt-um, ām-ārē, to love.*

| | | | | |
|----------|------------|------------|------------|--------------------|
| Crēpo, | crēpui, | crēpītum, | crēpāre. | <i>to creak.</i> |
| Do, | dēdi, | dātum, | dāre, | <i>to give.</i> |
| Dōmo, | dōmui, | dōmītum, | dōmāre, | <i>to tame.</i> |
| Jūvo, | jūvi, | jūtum, | jūvāre, | <i>to assist.</i> |
| Lāvo, | lāvi, | lāvātum, † | lāvāre, | <i>to wash.</i> |
| Praesto, | praestīti, | praestītum | praestāre, | <i>to perform</i> |
| Sēco, | sēcui, | sectum, | sēcāre, | <i>to cut.</i> |
| Sōno, | sōnui, | sōnītum, | sōnāre, | <i>to sound.</i> |
| Sto, | stēti, | stātum, | stāre, | <i>to stand.</i> |
| Tōno, | tōnui, | tōnītum, | tōnāre, | <i>to thunder.</i> |
| Vēto, | vētui, | vētītum, | vētāre, | <i>to forbid.</i> |

II.—THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The regular forms are -ēvi and -ētum: as, *Fleo, flēvi, flētum, flēre, to weep.* Verbs of this formation are few.

1. Perfect in -ui; Supine in -tum.

| | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------|----------|------------------|
| Dōceo, | dōcui, | doctum, | dōcēre, | <i>to teach.</i> |
| Misceo, | miscui, | mixtum, ‡ | miscēre, | <i>to mix.</i> |
| Tēneo, | tēnui, | tentum, | tēnēre, | <i>to hold.</i> |
| Torreo, | torruī, | tostum, | torrēre, | <i>to roast.</i> |

2. Perfect in -i (di); Supine in -sum.

| | | | | |
|---------|------------|-----------|----------|------------------|
| Sēdeo, | sēdi, | sessum, | sēdēre, | <i>to sit.</i> |
| Vīdeo, | vīdi, | vīsum, | vīdēre, | <i>to see.</i> |
| Mordeo, | mōmordi, ‡ | morsum, | mordēre, | <i>to bite.</i> |
| Pendeo, | pēpendi, | (pensum), | pendēre, | <i>to hang.</i> |
| Tondeo, | tōtondi, | tonsum, | tondēre, | <i>to shear.</i> |

* A fuller list is given in the Larger Grammar belonging to this Series.

† Also *lautum* and *lotum*.

‡ Also *mīstum*.

‡ These three reduplicate. A verb is said to reduplicate when it repeats in the perfect and derived tenses the first consonant and first vowel of the stem before the simple stem. Thus, the perf. of *mordeo* should be *mord-i*, but it is *mo-mo-rdī*.

3. *Perfect in -i (vi); Supine in -tum.*

| | | | | |
|--------|-------|---------|---------|----------------------|
| Cāveo, | cāvi, | cautum, | cāvēre, | <i>to take care.</i> |
| Fāveo, | fāvi, | fautum, | fāvēre, | <i>to favour.</i> |
| Fōveo, | fōvi, | fōtum, | fōvēre, | <i>to cherish.</i> |
| Mōveo | mōvi, | mōtum, | mōvēre, | <i>to move.</i> |
| Vōveo, | vōvi, | vōtum, | vōvēre, | <i>to vow.</i> |
| Pāveo, | pāvi, | — | pāvēre, | <i>to fear.</i> |

4. *Perfect in -si; Supine in -tum or -sum.*

| | | | | |
|----------|--------|---------|-----------|---------------------|
| Ardeo, | arsī, | arsum, | ardēre, | <i>to blaze.</i> |
| Augeo, | auxī, | auctum, | augēre, | <i>to increase.</i> |
| Haereo, | haesi, | haesum, | haerēre, | <i>to stick.</i> |
| Jūbeo, | jussi, | jussum, | jūbēre, | <i>to order.</i> |
| Lūceo, | luxi, | — | lūcēre. | <i>to shine.</i> |
| Māneo, | mansi, | mansum, | mānēre, | <i>to remain.</i> |
| Rīdeo, | rīsi, | rīsum, | rīdēre, | <i>to laugh.</i> |
| Suādeo, | suāsi, | suāsum, | suādēre, | <i>to advise.</i> |
| Torqueo, | torsi, | tortum, | torquēre, | <i>to twist.</i> |
| Urgeo, | ursi, | — | urgēre, | <i>to press.</i> |

5. *Semi-Deponents.*

| | | | | |
|---------|--------------|---|----------|--------------------|
| Audeo, | ausus sum, | — | audēre, | <i>to venture.</i> |
| Gaudeo, | gāvīsus sum, | — | gaudēre, | <i>to rejoice.</i> |
| Sōleo, | sōlītus sum, | — | sōlēre, | <i>to be wont.</i> |

III.—THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The regular forms are -i, -tum, or -si, -tum: as, *Scribo, scrip-si, scrip-tum, scrib-ēre, to write.*

A.—LABIAL STEMS.

1. *Perfect in -si; Supine in -tum.*

| | | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|-----------|------------------|
| Carpō, | carpsi, | carptum, | carpēre, | <i>to pluck.</i> |
| Nūbō, | nupsi, | nuptum, | nūbēre, | <i>to marry.</i> |
| Scrībō, | scripsi, | scriptum, | scribēre, | <i>to write.</i> |

2. *Perfect in -i; Supine in -tum, -itum, or wanting.*

| | | | | |
|----------|----------|------------|------------|---------------------|
| Bībō, | bībi, | (bibitum), | bībēre, | <i>to drink. °</i> |
| Lambō, | lambi, | — | lambēre, | <i>to lick.</i> |
| Rumpō, | rūpi, | ruptum, | rumpēre, | <i>to burst.</i> |
| Incumbō, | incūbui, | incūbītum, | incumbēre, | <i>to lie upon.</i> |

B.—GUTTURAL STEMS.

1. Perfect in -si; Supine in -tum.

| | | | | |
|----------|-----------|------------|------------|------------------|
| Affigo,* | affixi, | afflictum, | affligere, | to strike down. |
| Cingo, | cinxi, | cinctum, | cingere, | to surround. |
| Dico, | dixi, | dictum, | dicere, | to say. |
| Duco, | duxi, | ductum, | ducere, | to lead. |
| Fingo, | finxi, | fictum, | figere, | to invent. |
| Jungo, | junxi, | junctum, | jungere, | to join. |
| Rego, | rexii, | rectum, | regere, | to direct, rule. |
| Stringo, | strinxii, | strictum, | stringere, | to grasp. |
| Tego, | texii, | tectum, | tegere, | to cover. |
| Traho, | traxii, | tractum, | trahere, | to drag. |
| Unguo, | unxii, | unctum, | ungere, | to anoint. |
| Veho, | vexii, | vectum, | vehere, | to carry. |

2. Perfect in -si; Supine in -sum or -xum.

| | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|-----------|-------------|
| Figo, | fixii, | fixum, | figere, | to fix. |
| Flecto, | flexii, | flexum, | flectere, | to bend. |
| Mergo, | mersii, | mersum, | mergere, | to sink. |
| Spargo, | sparsii, | sparsum, | spargere, | to scatter. |

3. Perfect in -i, (reduplicated;); Supine in -sum or -tum.

| | | | | |
|--------|-----------|----------|----------|------------|
| Disco, | dīdīci, | — | discere, | to learn. |
| Parco, | pēperci,† | parsum,‡ | parcere, | to spare. |
| Posco, | pōposci, | — | poscere, | to demand. |
| Tango, | tētīgi, | tactum, | tangere, | to touch. |

4. Perfect in -i, (stem vowel lengthened;); Supine in -tum.

| | | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| Āgo, | ēgi, | actum, | āgere, | to do. |
| Frango, | frēgi, | fractum, | frangere, | to break. |
| Lēgo, | lēgi, | lectum, | lēgere, | to choose. |
| Linquo, | līqui, | (lictum), | linquere, | to leave. |
| Vinco, | vīci, | victum, | vincere, | to conquer. |
| Fluo, | fluxii, | fluctum,§ | fluere, | to flow. |
| Struo, | struxii, | structum, | struere, | to pile up. |
| Vivo, | vixii, | victum, | vivere, | to live. |

* *Fligo*, "to strike," is not used in the simple form.† Also *parsi*.‡ Also *parcitur*.§ Also *flurum*. In these three the guttural stem is disguised.

C.—DENTAL STEMS.

1. Perfect in -si; Supine in -sum.

| | | | | |
|---------|---------|----------|-----------|----------------|
| Cēdo, | cessi, | cessum, | cēdere, | to yield. |
| Claudo, | clausi, | clausum, | claudere, | to shut. |
| Divido, | divisi, | divisum, | dividere, | to divide. |
| Invado, | invāsi, | invāsūm, | invādere, | to go against. |
| Laedo, | laesi, | laesum, | laedere, | to injure. |
| Lūdo, | lūsi, | lūsum, | lūdere, | to play. |
| Mitto, | mīsi, | missum, | mittere, | to send. |
| Rādo, | rāsi, | rāsūm, | rādere, | to scrape. |
| Rōdo, | rōsi, | rōsum, | rōdere, | to gnaw. |

2. Perfect Reduplicated.

| | | | | |
|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|--------------------|
| Cādo, | cēcīdi, | cāsūm, | cādere, | to fall. |
| Caedo, | cēcīdi, | caesum, | caedere, | to strike, to cut. |
| Pendo, | pēpendi, | pensum, | pendere, | to weigh. |
| Tendo, | tētēdi, | tensum,* | tendere, | to stretch. |
| Tundo, | tūtūdi, | tunsum,† | tundere, | to beat. |
| Abdo,‡ | abdīdi, | abditum, | abdere, | to hide. |
| Addo, | addīdi, | additum, | addere, | to add. |
| Condo, | condīdi, | conditum, | condere, | to found. |
| Crēdo, | crēdīdi, | crēditum, | crēdere, | to believe. |
| Dēdo, | dēdīdi, | dēditum, | dēdere, | to give up. |
| Ēdo, | ēdīdi, | ēditum, | ēdere, | to give forth. |
| Indo, | indīdi, | inditum, | indere, | to put on. |
| Perdo, | perdīdi, | perditum, | perdere, | to ruin, to lose. |
| Prōdo, | prōdīdi, | prōditum, | prōdere, | to betray. |
| Reddo, | reddīdi, | redditum, | reddere, | to restore. |
| Subdo, | subdīdi, | subditum, | subdere, | to substitute. |
| Trado, | trādīdi, | trāditum, | trādere, | to hand over. |
| Vendo, | vendīdi, | venditum, | vendere, | to sell. |
| So also,— | | | | |
| Sisto, | stīti, | stātum, | sistere, | to cause to stand. |

3. Perfect in -i; Supine in -sum.

| | | | | |
|------------|----------|-----------|------------|-----------------|
| Accendo, | accendi, | accensum, | accendere, | to set on fire. |
| { Dēfendo, | dēfendi, | dēfensum, | dēfendere, | to defend. |
| { Offendo, | offendi, | offensum, | offendere, | to assault. |

* Also *tentum*.† Also *tūsum*.‡ The following are compounds of *do*, to put, give.

| | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|------------|-------------|-------------------|
| Ědo, | ēdi, | ēsum, | ěděre, | <i>to eat.</i> |
| Findo, | fīdi, | fissum, | finděre, | <i>to cleave.</i> |
| Fundo, | fūdi, | fūsum, | funděre, | <i>to pour.</i> |
| Incendo, | incendi, | incensum, | incenděre, | <i>to burn.</i> |
| Prěhendo, | prěhendi, | prěhensum, | prěhenděre, | <i>to grasp.</i> |
| Scando, | scandi, | scansum, | scanděre, | <i>to climb.</i> |
| Scindo, | scīdi, | scissum, | scinděre, | <i>to tear.</i> |
| Strīdo, | strīdi, | — | strīděre, | <i>to creak.</i> |
| Verto, | verti, | versum, | vertěre, | <i>to turn.</i> |

4. *Miscellaneous Forms.*

| | | | | |
|-------|------------|----------|---------|------------------|
| Fido, | fīsus sum, | — | fīděre, | <i>to trust.</i> |
| Pěto, | pětīvi, | pětītum, | pětěre, | <i>to seek.</i> |

D.—STEMS ENDING IN L, M, N.

1. *Perfect in -ui; Supine in -itum or -tum.*

| | | | | |
|----------|-----------|------------|------------|--------------------|
| Ālo, | ālui, | ālītum,* | ālěre, | <i>to nourish.</i> |
| Cōlo, | cōlui, | cultum, | cōlěre, | <i>to till.</i> |
| Consūlo, | consūlui, | consultum, | consūlěre, | <i>to consult.</i> |
| Frěmo, | frěmui, | frěmītum, | frěměre, | <i>to roar.</i> |
| Gěmo, | gěmui, | gěmītum, | gěměre, | <i>to groan.</i> |
| Gigno, | gěnui, | gěnītum, | gigněre, | <i>to produce.</i> |
| Trěmo, | trěmui, | — | trěměre, | <i>to tremble.</i> |
| Vōlo, | vōlui, | — | velle, | <i>to wish.</i> |
| Vōmo, | vōmni, | vōmītum, | vōměre, | <i>to vomit.</i> |
| Cāno, | cēcīni,† | cantum, | cāněre, | <i>to sing.</i> |
| Fallo, | fěfelli, | (falsum), | fallěre, | <i>to deceive.</i> |
| Pello, | pěpūli, | pulsum, | pellěre, | <i>to drive.</i> |

2. *Various Forms.*

| | | | | |
|--------|------------|------------|----------|---------------------|
| Sūmo, | sumpsi, | sumptum, | sūměre, | <i>to take up.</i> |
| Temno, | (temptsi), | (temptum), | temněre, | <i>to despise.</i> |
| Ěmo, | ěmi, | emptum, | ěměre, | <i>to buy.</i> |
| Prěmo, | pressi, | pressum, | prěměre, | <i>to press.</i> |
| Sīno, | sīvi, | sītum, | sīněre, | <i>to permit.</i> |
| Tollo, | sustūli, | sublātum, | tollěre, | <i>to raise up.</i> |

* Also *altum*.

† With reduplication.

E.—STEMS ENDING IN R.

| | | | | |
|---------|-----------|------------|-----------|------------------------|
| Cerno, | crēvi, | crētum, | cernēre, | <i>to divide.</i> |
| Curro, | cūcurri, | cursum, | currēre, | <i>to run.</i> |
| Fēro, | tūli, | lātum, | ferre, | <i>to bear, carry.</i> |
| Gēro, | gessi, | gestum, | gērēre, | <i>to carry.</i> |
| Quaero, | quaesīvi, | quaesītum, | quaerēre, | <i>to seek.</i> |
| Sēro, | sēruī, | sertum, | sērēre, | <i>to entwine.</i> |
| Sēro, | sēvi, | sātum, | sērēre, | <i>to sow.</i> |
| Sperno, | sprēvi, | sprētum, | spernēre, | <i>to despise.</i> |
| Sterno, | strāvi, | strātum, | sternēre, | <i>to strew.</i> |
| Tēro, | trīvi, | tritum, | tērēre, | <i>to rub.</i> |
| Ūro, | ussi, | ustum, | ūrēre, | <i>to burn.</i> |

F.—STEMS ENDING IN S, X.

| | | | | |
|----------|------------|-------------|------------|--------------------|
| Lācesso, | lācessīvi, | lācessītum, | lācessere, | <i>to provoke.</i> |
| Pōno, | pōsui, | pōsītum, | pōnēre, | <i>to place.</i> |
| Vīso, | vīsi, | — | vīsere, | <i>to visit.</i> |

G.—STEMS ENDING IN U, V.

Perfect in -i; Supine in -tum.

| | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------------------|
| Ācuo, | ācui, | ācūtum, | ācuēre, | <i>to sharpen.</i> |
| Exuo, | exui, | exūtum, | exuēre, | <i>to put off.</i> |
| Induo, | indui, | indūtum. | induēre, | <i>to put on.</i> |
| Lāvo, | lāvi, | lōtum,* | lāvēre, | <i>to wash.</i> |
| Luo, | lui, | — | luēre, | <i>to atone.</i> |
| Mētuo, | mētui, | — | mētuēre, | <i>to fear.</i> |
| Mīnuo, | mīnui, | mīnūtum, | mīnuēre, | <i>to lessen.</i> |
| Rūo, | ruī, | rūtum,† | ruēre, | <i>to rush.</i> |
| Solvo, | solvi, | sōlūtum, | solvēre, | <i>to loosen.</i> |
| Stātuo, | stātui, | stātūtum, | stātuēre, | <i>to set up.</i> |
| Tribo, | tribui, | tribūtum, | tribuēre, | <i>to distribute.</i> |
| Volvo, | volvi, | vōlūtum, | volvēre, | <i>to roll.</i> |

H.—VERBS ENDING IN -SCO.

Verbs which end in -sco are called *inceptive* or *inchoative*; that is, they denote the beginning of an action.

| | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| Ābōlesco, | ābōlēvi, | ābōlītum, | ābōlescere, | <i>to grow out of use.</i> |
| Ādōlesco, | ādōlēvi, | ādultum, | ādōlescere, | <i>to grow up.</i> |
| Convālesco, | convālui, | convālītum, | convālescere, | <i>to grow strong.</i> |

* Also *lautum* and *lavātum*. See p. 161.

† Also *ruitum*.

| | | | | |
|----------|---------|----------|------------|-------------------|
| Cresco, | crēvi, | crētum, | crescere, | to grow. |
| Nosco, | nōvi, | nōtum, | noscere, | to know. |
| Pasco, | pāvi, | pastum, | pascere, | to feed. |
| Quiesco, | quiēvi, | quiētum, | quiescere, | to become quiet. |
| Suesco, | suēvi, | suētum, | suescere, | to be accustomed. |

IV.—THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS COMBINED.

| | | | | |
|---------|-----------|----------|----------|-----------------|
| Cāpio, | cēpi, | captum, | cāpere, | to take. |
| Cūpio, | cūpīvi, | cūpītum, | cūpere, | to desire. |
| Fācio, | fēci, | factum, | fācere, | to make. |
| Fōdio, | fōdi, | fossūm, | fōdere, | to dig. |
| Fūgio, | fūgi, | fūgītum, | fūgere, | to flee. |
| Jācio, | jēci, | jactum, | jācere, | to throw. |
| Pārio, | pēpēri, | partum, | pārere, | to bring forth. |
| Quātio, | (quassi), | quassum, | quātēre, | to shake. |
| Rāpio, | rāpui, | raptum, | rāpere, | to seize. |

V.—THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

The regular forms are -īvi and -ītum; as, aud-io, -īvi, -ītum, -īre.

| | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--------------------|
| Āperio, | āpēruī, | āpertum, | āpērire, | to open. |
| Eo, | īvi, | ītum, | īre, | to go. |
| Haurio, | hausi, | haustum, | haurire, | to draw (water). |
| Sālio, | sālui,* | saltum, | sālire, | to leap. |
| Sentio, | sensi, | sensum, | sentire, | to feel, to think. |
| Sēpēlio, | sēpēlīvi, | sēpultum, | sēpēlire, | to bury. |
| Vēnio, | vēni, | ventum, | vēnire, | to come. |
| Vincio, | vinxi, | vinctum, | vincire, | to bind. |

VI.—DEPONENT VERBS.†

Second Conjugation.

| | | | |
|------------|-----------------|------------|----------------------|
| Fāteor, | fassus sum, | fātēri, | to confess. |
| Mēreor, | mēritus sum, | mērēri, | to earn, to deserve. |
| Pollīceor, | pollīcītus sum, | pollīcēri, | to promise. |
| Reor, | rātus sum, | rēri, | to think. |
| Tueor, | tuītus sum, | tuēri, | to protect. |
| Vēreor, | vērītus sum, | vērēri, | to fear. |

* Also sālii.

† See p. 84.

Third Conjugation.

| | | | |
|--------------|----------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| Amplector, | amplexus sum, | amplecti, | <i>to embrace.</i> |
| Ādīpiscor, | ādeptus sum, | ādīpisci, | <i>to obtain.</i> |
| Fruor, | frūitus sum,* | frui, | <i>to enjoy.</i> |
| Fungor, | functus sum, | fungi, | <i>to perform.</i> |
| Grādior. | gressus sum, | grādi, | <i>to step.</i> |
| Irascor, | — | īrasci, | <i>to be angry.</i> |
| Lābor, | lapsus sum, | lābi, | <i>to slip.</i> |
| Lōquor, | lōcūtus sum, | lōqui, | <i>to speak.</i> |
| Mōrior. | mortuus sum, | mōri, | <i>to die.</i> |
| Nanciscor, | nactus sum, | nancisci, | <i>to obtain by chance.</i> |
| Nascor, | nātus sum, | nasci, | <i>to be born.</i> |
| Obliviscor, | oblītus sum, | oblivisci, | <i>to forget.</i> |
| Pātior, | passus sum, | pāti, | <i>to suffer.</i> |
| Prōfīciscor, | prōfectus sum, | prōfīcisci, | <i>to set out.</i> |
| Quēror, | questus sum, | quēri, | <i>to complain.</i> |
| Sēquor, | sēcūtus sum, | sēqui, | <i>to follow.</i> |
| Ulciscor, | ultus sum, | ulcisci, | <i>to avenge.</i> |
| Ūtor, | ūsus sum, | ūti, | <i>to use.</i> |

Fourth Conjugation.

| | | | |
|-----------|---------------|----------|---------------------------------|
| Expērior, | expertus sum, | expēri, | <i>to try.</i> |
| Mentior, | mentītus sum, | mentīri, | <i>to lie.</i> |
| Mētior, | mensus sum, | mētīri, | <i>to measure.</i> |
| Mōlior, | mōlītus sum, | mōlīri, | <i>to labour.</i> |
| Ordior, | orsus sum, | ordīri, | <i>to begin.</i> |
| Orior, | ortus sum, | ōrīri, | <i>to rise.</i> |
| Partior, | partītus sum, | partīri, | <i>to divide.</i> |
| Pōtior, | pōtītus sum, | pōtīri, | <i>to obtain possession of.</i> |

* Also *fructus*.

GREEK NOUNS.

The subjoined table sets forth at one view the most important varieties of Greek nouns as declined in Latin:—

| NOMINATIVE. | GENITIVE. | DATIVE. | ACCUSATIVE. | VOCA-TIVE. | ABLATIVE. |
|---------------|--------------|---------------------|--------------|------------|---------------------|
| Cramb-ē | es or ae | ae | cn | e | e |
| Aenē-as | ae | ae | am or an | a | a |
| Anchis-es | ae | ae | en, em or am | a or e | a or e |
| Pl. -ae | arum | is | as | ae | is |
| Del-os | i | o | on or um | e | o |
| Ili-on (n.) | i | o | on | on | o |
| Dogm-a (n.) | atis | ati | a | a | ate |
| Pl. Dogm-ata. | atum | atis (or atibus) | ata | ata | atis (or atibus) |
| Mel-as | anos or anis | ani | ana | as | ane |
| Atl-as | antis | anti | anta or em | as or a | ante |
| Pall-as | ados or adis | adi | ada or adem | as | ade |
| Troez-en | euis | eui | ena | en | ene |
| Neocl-es | is or i | i or ei | em or ea | es or e | e or i |
| Orph-eus. | eos or ei | ei or eo | ea or eum | eu | eo |
| Tiber-is | is or idos | idi | im or in | is or i | ide |
| Tyrann-is | idos or idis | idi | idem or ida | i | ide |
| Par-is | idis or idos | idi | idem or in | is or i | ide |
| Sol-on | onts | oni | ona | on | one |
| Phaëth-on | ontis | onti | onta | on | onte |
| Erinn-ys | yos or yis | yi | ym or yn | y or ys | ye(ory) |
| Chlam-ys | ŷdis or ydos | ydi | ydem or yda | ys | yde |
| My-ūs | untis | unti | unta | us | unte |
| Simō-is | entis | enti | enta | is | ente |

Obs. 1.—Many nouns of Declension III. prefer the gen. in *-i* (as of the Second Declension) to that in *-is*; as, *Pericles*, gen. *Pericli* (rather than *Perictis*).

Obs. 2.—The Greek gen. in *-os*, the acc. in *-a*, and the acc. plur. in *-ās*, are often preferred to the Latin terminations of these cases.

THE CALENDAR.

1. According to the reformed Calendar of Julius Caesar (B.C. 45), the year was regulated almost as at present with ourselves. Our names for the months are merely adaptations from the Roman names, *Januarius*, *Februarius*, *Martius*, &c.

2. *Obs. 1.*—The Roman year originally began on the 1st of March; hence the fifth month was called *Quinctilis*, the sixth *Sextilis*, the seventh *Septembris*, &c.

3. *Obs. 2.*—But in the time of Augustus the names of the fifth and sixth months were changed to *Julius* and *Augustus*, in honour of the two great Caesars who had made so important alterations on the Calendar.

4. The Romans did not count the days of the month *right on*, as we do; but selecting three fixed periods in each month, subdivided their months into three portions, and computed the days in each portion as so many *before the first* of the succeeding portion.

5. These periods were as follows:—

(a) The *Calends*, or 1st day of the month.

(b) The *Nones*, or 5th day of the month; *i.e.*, nine days before the *Ides*. (See Art. 6.)

(c) The *Ides*, or 13th day of the month: which divided the month into nearly equal parts. (See Art. 6.)

6. *Obs.*—In the four months, March, May, July, and October, which were originally two days longer, the *Nones* fell on the 7th, and, consequently, the *Ides* on the 15th, as expressed in the following rhyme:—

“In March, July, October, May,
The *Nones* fall on the seventh day.”

7. The day of the month was expressed in two ways:—

(a) In the ablative: as, *Kalendis Januariis*, the 1st of January; *Quinto die ante Kalendas Januarias*, the 28th December; or shortly, *V. Kal. Jan.*

(b) By the phrase *Ante diem quintum Kalendas Januarias*; or shortly, *a. d. V. Kal. Jan.**

8. The 1st of January, then, was expressed by *Kalendis Januariis*, or *Kal. Jan.*; the 2nd by *quarto ante Nonas Januarias*, or *IV. Non. Jan.*, or *a. d. IV. Non. Jan.*; the 3rd by *tertio ante Non. Jan.*, or *III. Non. Jan.*, &c.; the 4th by *pridie Nonas* (*i.e.*, *pridie ante Non. Jan.*); the 5th by *Nonis Jan.*; the 6th by *octavo ante Idus Januarias*, or *VIII. Id. Jan.*, &c.; the 7th by *VII. Id. Jan.*, and so on. The 13th was expressed by *Idibus Januariis*; the 14th by *XIX. Kal. Feb.*, *i.e.*, *XIX. ante Kalendas Februarias*; the 31st by *pridie Kal. Feb.*; the 30th by *III. Kal. Feb.*

* This phrase seems to have been originally, *Ante Kalendas Januarias, die quinto.*

9. *Obs.*—It will be observed, by reference to the following table, p. 172, that there occurs no “second day before the Nones, Ides, or Calends” of any month. This arises from the circumstance that the Romans counted *inclusively*; i.e., both the day *from* which they started and the day which they reached. Thus in the above example the 5th of January (the Nones) is counted *one*, the 4th (*pridie*) *two*, and the 3rd *three*.

10. To reduce an English date to a Roman one, the two following rules will be found useful:—

(1.) If the date fall between the Calends and the Nones, or between the Nones and the Ides,

Rule I.—Subtract the number of the given day from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides occur, and add one (for the inclusive reckoning).

Ex.—Thus in January the Nones are on the 5th; and if we wish to know how to express the 2nd, we subtract 2 from 5, which leaves 3; to this we add 1, and write *IV. Non. Jan.*

(2.) If the date fall between the Ides and the Calends,

Rule II.—Subtract the number of the given day from the number of days in the month, and add two (for inclusive reckoning). See Art. 11.

Ex.—Thus if we wish to express the 20th January, we subtract 20 from 31, leaving 11; to which we add 2, making 13; i.e., *XIII. ante Kal. Feb.*

11. *Obs. 1.*—As we count to the Calends of February, this forms an *extra* day beyond the month (January) in which our date lies, and so it becomes necessary to add another day besides the one for inclusive reckoning.
12. *Obs. 2.*—These rules may be briefly expressed in the rhyme,—

“ In Nones and Ides add only *one*,
 But in all Calends *two*;
 And then subtract the number given;
 You’ll find the date quite true.”

13. In leap year the 24th February was counted twice (i.e., a day was intercalated between the 24th and 25th February,) and the added day was expressed thus: *a. d. bissextum Kal. Mart.* Hence the phrase *Annus bissextilis*, and our term *bissextile*.

14. *Obs.*—This added day did not affect the earlier days of February, for the 23rd was called, as before, *VII. Kal. Mart.*, the 22nd *VIII.*, and so on.

15. The days of the week were,—

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| 1. Sunday.. | { <i>Dies Solis</i> (or <i>Dies Dominicus</i>), the Lord's day; (French, <i>Dimanche</i>). |
| 2. Monday | <i>Dies Lunae</i> (<i>Lundi</i>). |
| 3. Tuesday | <i>Dies Martis</i> (<i>Mardi</i>). |
| 4. Wednesday | <i>Dies Mercurii</i> (<i>Mercredi</i>). |
| 5. Thursday | <i>Dies Jovis</i> (<i>Jeudi</i>). |
| 6. Friday..... | <i>Dies Veneris</i> (<i>Vendredi</i>). |
| 7. Saturday..... | <i>Dies Saturni</i> , or <i>Dies Sabbati</i> (<i>Samedi</i>). |

THE ROMAN YEAR.

| Days of the Month. | Apr., Jun., Sept., Nov., 30 days. | Jan., Aug., Dec., 31 days. | Mar., Mai., Jul., Oct., 31 days. | Feb., 28 days. In Leap Year 29. |
|--------------------|--|--|--|--|
| 1 | Calendis. | Calendis. | Calendis. | Calendis. |
| 2 | IV. } Ante Nonas | IV. } Ante Nonas | VI. } Ante Nonas | IV. } Ante Nonas |
| 3 | III. } Ante Nonas | III. } Ante Nonas | V. } Ante Nonas | III. } Ante Nonas |
| 4 | Prid. Non. } Ante Nonas | Prid. Non. } Ante Nonas | IV. } Ante Nonas | Prid. Non. } Ante Nonas |
| 5 | Nonis. } Ante Idus | Nonis. } Ante Idus | III. } Ante Idus | Nonis. } Ante Idus |
| 6 | VIII. } Ante Idus | VIII. } Ante Idus | Prid. Non. } Ante Idus | VIII. } Ante Idus |
| 7 | VII. } Ante Idus | VII. } Ante Idus | Nonis. } Ante Idus | VII. } Ante Idus |
| 8 | VI. } Ante Idus | VI. } Ante Idus | VIII. } Ante Idus | VI. } Ante Idus |
| 9 | V. } Ante Idus | V. } Ante Idus | VII. } Ante Idus | V. } Ante Idus |
| 10 | IV. } Ante Idus | IV. } Ante Idus | VI. } Ante Idus | IV. } Ante Idus |
| 11 | III. } Ante Idus | III. } Ante Idus | V. } Ante Idus | III. } Ante Idus |
| 12 | Prid. Id. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | Prid. Id. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | IV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | Prid. Id. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 13 | Idibus. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | Idibus. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | III. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | Idibus. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 14 | XVIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XIX. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | Prid. Id. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XVI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 15 | XVII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XVIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | Idibus. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 16 | XVI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XVII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XVII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XIV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 17 | XV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XVI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XVI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 18 | XIV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 19 | XIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XIV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XIV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 20 | XII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | X. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 21 | XI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | IX. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 22 | X. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | XL } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | VIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 23 | IX. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | X. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | X. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | VII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 24 | VIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | IX. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | IX. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | VI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 25 | VII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | VIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | VIII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | V. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 26 | VI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | VII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | VII. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | IV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 27 | V. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | VI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | VI. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | III. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. |
| 28 | IV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | V. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | V. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | Pr. Cal. Mar. |
| 29 | III. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | IV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | IV. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | |
| 30 | Pr. Cal. M. seq. | III. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | III. } Ante Kal. Mens. seq. | |
| 31 | | Pr. Cal. M. seq. | Pr. Cal. M. seq. | |

MONEY.

1. The unit of value in the Roman coinage was the *As*, made of copper, or of the mixed metal, *aes*. It was at first equivalent to a pound of 12 ounces.

2. The *as* was ultimately (in the time of Augustus) reduced to a small coin (of copper), equal to about three farthings of our money.

3. The *Dēnārius* was a silver coin, and originally contained 10 *asses*, afterwards 18.

4. The *Aureus* was a gold coin, containing 25 *denarii*, or 100 *sesterces*.

ROMAN COINS.

| | | English Money. | | |
|-----------------|------------------------|----------------|----|-----------------|
| | | s. | d. | q. |
| 1 | As, or Libella, | 0 | 0 | 3 $\frac{1}{6}$ |
| 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ | Asses, | 1 | 0 | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ |
| 2 | Sestertii, | 1 | 3 | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ |
| 2 | Quinarii, | 1 | 7 | 3 |
| 25 | Denarii, | 16 | 1 | 3 |

5. But in the later days of the Commonwealth, the *sestertius* was the great unit of calculation. It was equal to 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ asses, or about 2d. of our money.

ROMAN COMPUTATION OF MONEY.

SESTERTII NUMMI.

| | | £ | s. | d. | q. |
|--|--------|---|----|----|-----------------|
| Sestertius, or nummus, | | 0 | 0 | 1 | 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ |
| Decem sestertii, | | 0 | 1 | 7 | 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ |
| Mille sestertii (equal to a sestertium), | | 8 | 1 | 5 | 2 |

SESTERTIA.

| | | | | | |
|--|--------|----|----|---|---|
| Sestertium (equal to mille sestertii), | | 8 | 1 | 5 | 2 |
| Decem sestertia, | | 80 | 14 | 7 | 0 |
| Centum, centum sestertia, or centum millia sestertium, | 807 | 5 | 10 | 0 | |

DECIES SESTERTIUM, ETC., CENTIES BEING.

UNDERSTOOD.

| | | £ | s. | d. |
|---|--------|---------|----|----|
| Decies sestertium, or Decies centena millia nummum, | ... | 8,072 | 18 | 4 |
| Centies, or Centies HS., | | 80,729 | 3 | 4 |
| Millies HS., | | 807,291 | 13 | 4 |
| Millies centies HS., | | 888,020 | 16 | 8 |

6. *Obs.*—*Sestertius*, i.e., *semis tertius*, was often expressed by the sign IIS., or LLS., or HS. It literally means "the third is a half;" i.e., the third is not a whole; and this was counted only one half. Hence it was called two and a half.

7. Below one thousand the sesterces were expressed in the ordinary way, *Quingenti sestertii*, *Mille sestertii*, &c. But when several thousands were spoken of, the neut. plur. *sestertia* was often used; as, *Tria sestertia*, or *Tria millia sestertium*.

8. When the sum amounted to or exceeded a million sesterces, the multiplicative adverbs were joined with *sestertium*, or HS., *centena millia* being omitted; as, *Decies sestertium* (i.e., *Decies centena millia sestertium*, ten times a hundred thousand sesterces) means one million sesterces. The words *millia sestertium* are sometimes omitted, and *decies* (*octies*, &c.) *centena* only expressed.

9. *Obs.* 1.—The word *sestertium*, reckoned neut., was originally a gen. plur. for *sestertiorum*; but in course of time its primary form and nature were forgotten, and it was ranked as a neut. sing. noun.

10. *Obs.* 2.—When a line was placed over the numbers, *centena millia* was understood; thus, HS. $\overline{\text{MC}}$ is equal to *millies centies HS.*, 100 millions; but HS. $\overline{\text{MC}}$ is only 1100 sesterces.

11. The Romans paid interest on money monthly, the highest rate being 1 per cent. (*centesima*) a month; i.e., 12 per cent. per annum.

ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

| | | | | | | | English. | | |
|-----|-----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----------|-----|----------|-------|---------|
| | | | | | | | Yards. | Feet. | Inches. |
| 1 | Pes, | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 11·604 |
| 1 | Gradus, | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 2 | 5·01 |
| 2 | Gradus, | ... | ... | 1 | Passus, | ... | ... | 4 | 10·02 |
| 125 | Passus, | ... | ... | 1 | Stadium, | ... | ... | 1 | 2 |
| 8 | Stadia (1000 passus), | ... | ... | 1 | Milliare, | ... | ... | 1611 | 0 |

Obs.—An English mile is 1760 yards.

For Weights, Measures, &c., see Text Book of Antiquities.

ROMAN NAMES.

1. Most Roman citizens had three names, one to distinguish the individual, another the gens, and a third the family; thus, Publius Cornelius Scipio, Marcus Tullius Cicero.

2. The middle name was the *nomen proper*, and indicated the gens; the third was the *cognomen*, and indicated the family (*familia*); and the first was the *praenomen*, pointing out the individual, and corresponding to our "Christian name."

3. When a family increased very largely, and sent out many branches, distinctive names were added to the sub-families; as, Lucius Cornelius Lentulus Crus, Lucius Cornelius Lentulus Niger,—both of which families belonged to the *gens Cornelia*, and the *familia* of the Lentuli.

4. When a person was adopted into another gens, he usually took the full name of his adopted father, but added the name of *his own gens*: thus the son of L. Aemilius Paulus, being adopted by P. Cornelius Scipio, became P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus, still showing his descent from the *gens Aemilia*.

5. A complimentary title was sometimes bestowed by the army or the citizens, to commemorate some great service to the State, as *Africanus* added to Scipio's name, from his conquest of the Carthaginians; his full name then being P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus.

6. Freed slaves took their liberator's name, adding some agnomen appropriate to themselves; thus Terence, the comic poet, was called Publius Terentius Afer.

7. Women had, generally, neither praenomen nor cognomen, but simply the gentile name. Thus Caesar's daughter was simply *Julia*, Cicero's *Tullia*.

ABBREVIATIONS.

I.—PRAENOMINA, OR FIRST NAMES.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| A., Aulus. | Mam., Mamercus. |
| App., Appius. | N. or Num., Numerius. |
| C. or G., Caius or Gaius. | P., Publius. |
| Cn. (Gn.), Cnaeus, or Gnaeus. | Q., Quintus. |
| D., Decimus. | S. or Sex., Sextus. |
| K., Kaeso. | Ser., Servius. |
| L., Lucius. | Sp., Spurius. |
| M., Marcus. | T., Titus. |
| M', Manius. | Ti., Tiberius. |

II.—ANCIENT TITLES, ETC.

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Cos., Consul. | P.R., Populus Romanus. |
| Cos. des., Consul designatus. | Praet., Praetor. |
| Coss., Consules.* | Praett., Praetores.* |
| F., Filius. | Quir., Quirites. |
| Imp., Imperator. | Resp., Respublica. |
| N., Nepos, (grandson). | S.P.Q.R., Senatus Populusque Romanus. |
| O.M., Optimus Maximus. | X.V., Decemvir. |
| P.C., Patres Conscripti. | |

III.—EPISTOLARY.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| D., data (est epistola). | S.V.B.E.E.V., Si vales, bene est, ego valeo. |
| S., Salutem (scil. dicit). | S.V.G.V., Si vales gaudeo. Valeo. |
| S.D., Salutem dicit. | V., Vale. |
| S.P.D., Salutem plurimam dicit. | |

IV.—MISCELLANEOUS.

| | |
|---|---|
| A.U.C., Anno urbis conditae, or Ab urbe condita. | H.M.H.N.S., (a) Hoc monumentum heredes non sequitur. |
| D.D., Dono dedit. | L., Libertas. |
| DD., Dederunt. | M.P., Mille passuum. |
| D.D.D., Dat, dicat, dedicat. | Ob., (a) Obiit. |
| D.M., Dis Manibus. | P.C., (a) Ponendum curavit. |
| D.O.M., Deo Optimo Maximo. | Q.B.F.F.Q.S., Quod bonum felix faustumque sit. |
| F.C., (a) Faciendum curavit. | S.C., Senatus consultum. |
| H.C.E., (a) Hic conditus est. | V., (a) Vixit. |
| H.S.E., (a) Hic situs est. | |

(a) Used on tombs.

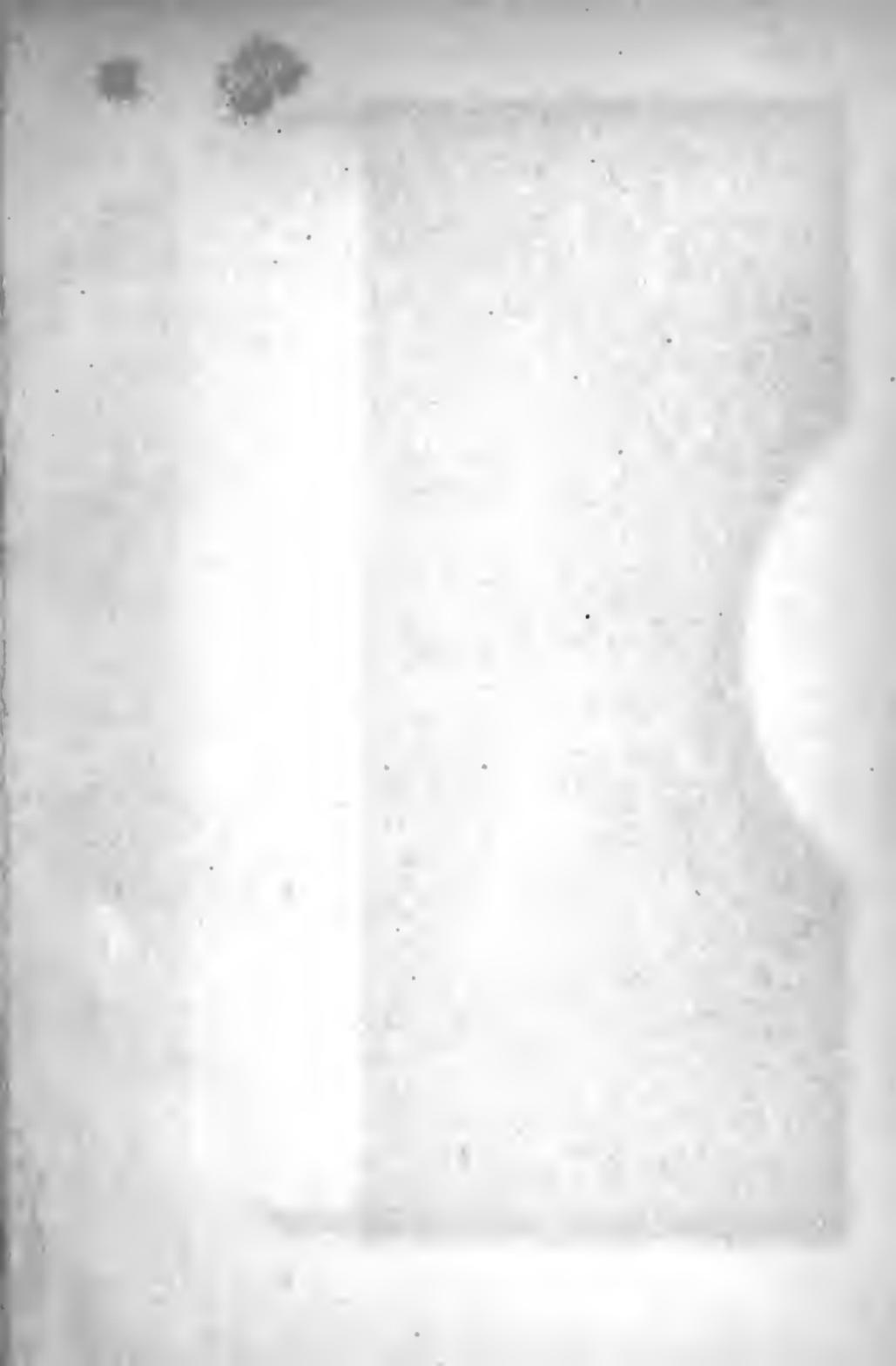
* See Note (b), p. 176.

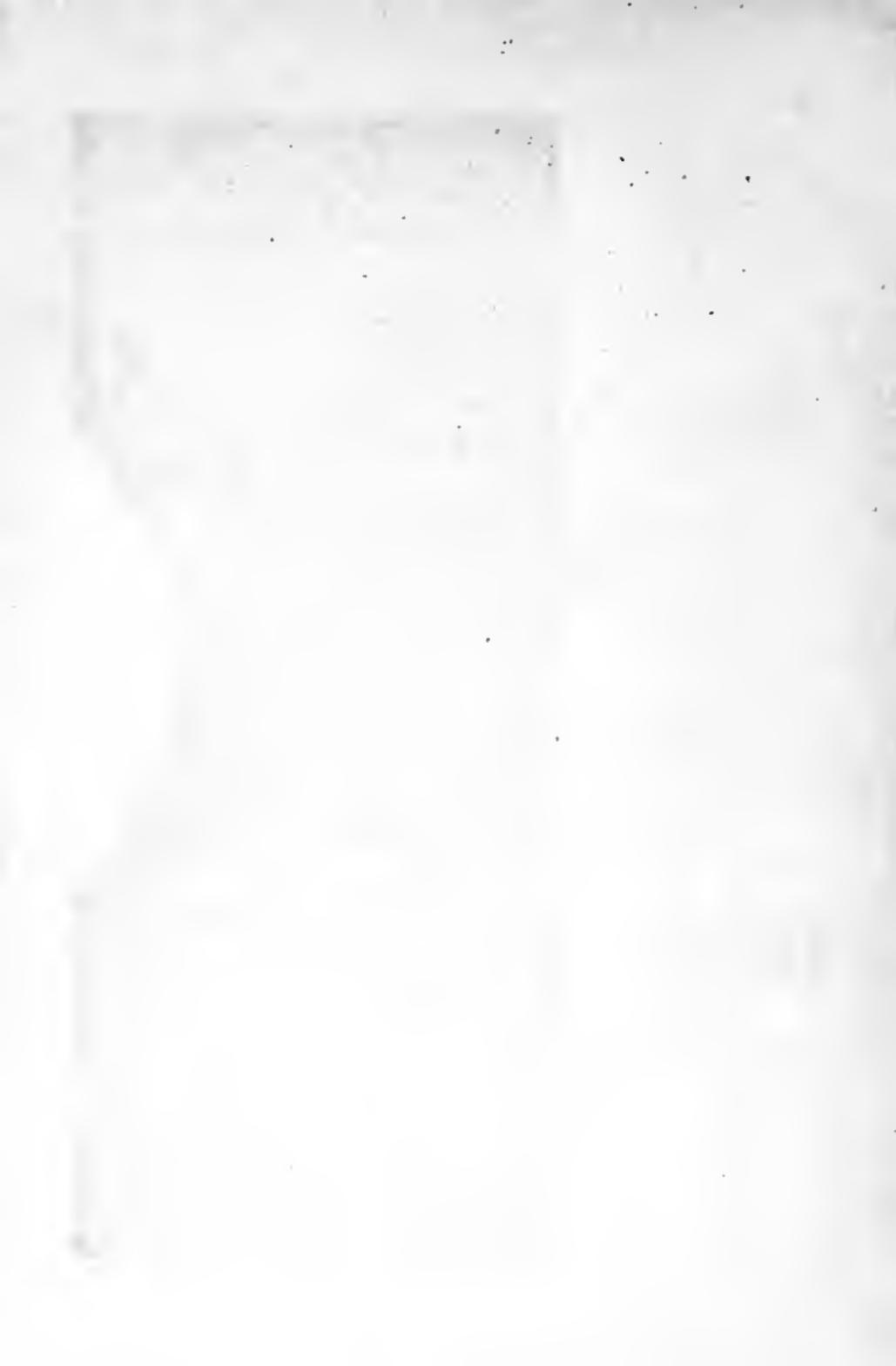
V.—MODERN ABBREVIATIONS.

| | |
|---|---|
| A.B. or B.A., Artium Baccalaureus, <i>Bachelor of Arts.</i> | L.B., Lectori benevolo, <i>To the indulgent reader.</i> |
| A.C., (a) Ante Christum, <i>Before Christ.</i> | LL.B., Legum Baccalaureus, <i>Bachelor of Laws.</i> |
| A.D., Anno Domini, <i>In the year of our Lord.</i> | LL.D., Legum Doctor, <i>Doctor of Laws.</i> |
| A.M. or M.A., Artium Magister, <i>Master of Arts.</i> | M.B., Medicinæ Baccalaureus, <i>Bachelor of Medicine.</i> |
| Cet., Cetera, <i>The rest.</i> | M.D., Medicinæ Doctor, <i>Doctor of Medicine.</i> |
| Cf., Confer, <i>Compare.</i> | MS., Manuscriptus (scil., liber) or Manuscriptum, <i>A manuscript.</i> |
| Cod., Codex, <i>Copy.</i> | MSS., plur., <i>Manuscripts.</i> |
| Codd., (b) Codices, <i>Copies.</i> | N.B., Nota bene, <i>Observe carefully.</i> |
| D., Doctor, <i>Doctor.</i> | N.T., Novum Testamentum, <i>The New Testament.</i> |
| D.D., Doctor of Divinity. | P.S., Postscriptum, <i>Postscript (written after).</i> |
| Del., Dele, <i>Blot out.</i> | Q.v., Quod vide, <i>Which see.</i> |
| Ed., Editio, <i>Edition.</i> | Sc., Scilicet, <i>To wit.</i> |
| Edd., (b) Editiones, <i>Editions.</i> | Sq., (quod) Sequitur, <i>The following.</i> |
| E.g., Exempli gratia, <i>For example.</i> | Sqq., (plur.,) <i>The following.</i> |
| Etc., Et cetera, <i>And the rest.</i> | S.T.B., Sanctæ Theologiæ Baccalaureus, <i>Bachelor of Divinity.</i> |
| H.e., Hoc est, <i>That (this) is.</i> | S.T.D., Doctor of Divinity. |
| I.C., Jesus Christ. | S.T.P., Professor of Divinity. |
| I.H.S., Jesus hominum Salvator, <i>Jesus the Saviour of mankind.</i> | V.D.M., Verbi Divini Minister, <i>Minister of the Gospel.</i> |
| Ib. or Ibid., Ibidem, <i>In the same place.</i> | Viz., Videlicet, <i>Namely.</i> |
| J.U.D., Juris Utriusque Doctor, <i>Doctor of Laws.</i> | V.T., Vetus Testamentum, <i>The Old Testament.</i> |
| Id., Idem, <i>The same.</i> | |
| I.e., Id est, <i>That is.</i> | |
| I.q., Id quod, <i>That which.</i> | |
| Leg., Lege, <i>Read.</i> | |

(a) "Before Christ" is very often indicated by the English initials, *B.C.*

(b) In abbreviations like *Edd., LL.D., MSS.*, the second of the doubled letters (*d, l, or s*) does not stand for a separate word, but indicates the plural number; hence there should be no point between the doubled letters.





**University of Toronto
Library**

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED

